

9/4 $\frac{1}{2}$

Samuel R. K.

SURGEON GENERAL'S OFFICE
LIBRARY.

Section

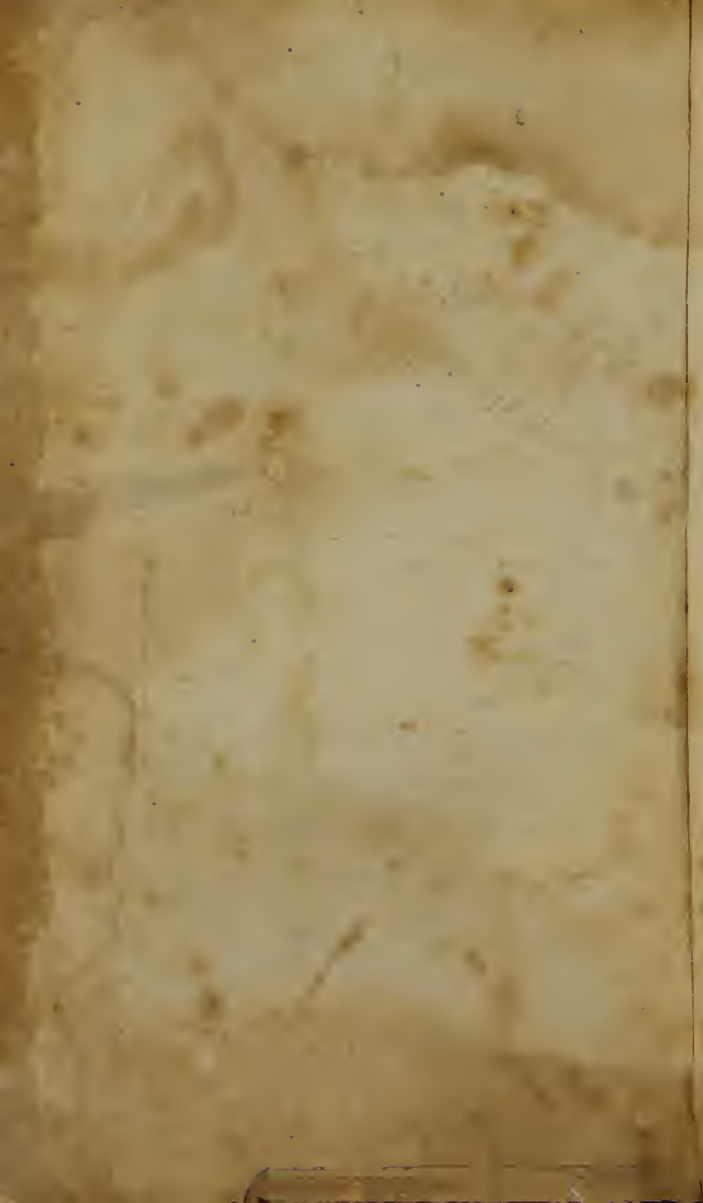
No. 113,
W. D. S. G. O.

No. 3 / 2465

3-513

Dr. S. T. Ferguson.





AMERICAN FARRIER:

ADAPTED FOR THE CONVENIENCE OF THE
FARMER....GENTLEMAN....AND SMITH;

BEING

A SURE GUIDE
TO PREVENT AND CURE
ALL MALADIES AND DISTEMPERS
THAT ARE INCIDENT TO HORSES,
OF WHAT KIND SOEVER;
WITH A VARIETY OF OTHER VALUABLE THINGS
RELATING TO THEM:
AND ALSO,
FOR THE DISEASES INCIDENT
TO CATTLE.

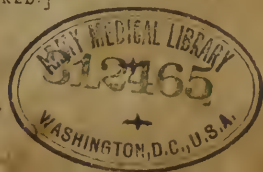
BY AUGUSTUS FRANKLIN.

STRASBURG:

PRINTED & SOLD BY BROWN & BOWMAN.

[COPY-RIGHT SECURED.]

.....
1803,



W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

W. H. H. H.

Prefatory Address.

FEW subjects in the common affairs of life—relating to property—more immediately connects itself with the interest of individuals, than an efficient knowledge of a number of *means* to repel such a variety of diseases as are incident to horses; and yet, few there are, who have made themselves acquainted with *them*, notwithstanding their repeated losses, to the great injury of their circumstances—in many instances—and the excruciating sufferings of their poor beasts. How much more does it become necessary to have a knowledge of FARRIERY, when there are so few *professionals*, and those who are, perhaps but poorly skilled in IT. Were your horse to be attacked with some desperate disease—as they often are—which threatens immediate destruction—what time then to go in quest of a farrier, who may probably live a very unfavorable distance:—immediate medical interposition must be had, or death is the final issue. Hence it is, that the knowledge of this useful science becomes so indispensibly necessary for every individual to have, whose circumstances are any way connected with it. We ought, then, to avail ourselves by every opportunity of obtaining information on this head, that is worthy of notice, to have done with the losses of beasts, which so much hurts our œconomy, and places us under many pecuniary disadvantages.

That you may not be at a loss for a remedy in almost every case of disease, you are well supplied in the following pages with the most effective means of cure—laid down simple and plain—free from those *ambiguities* and *physi-*

cal terms, used with so much freedom and ostentation, by many of our modern writers on the subject—with a view, perhaps, of attracting the attention of the people, as having something wonderful couched under *them*. It is, however, most certain, that he who writes for the benefit of the people at large, must, if he expects to be really useful, have it in such a dress, as can without difficulty, so far as is possible from the nature of the subject, be understood.

There are so many prescriptions for each several disease, mentioned in this work, that should the *first* means fail, *another* is at hand. Where any surgical or medical operation is necessary for your beast, I would recommend the most mild course of it. You will observe several diseases, such as ring-bones, spavins, &c. that some of the prescriptions for cure are very *painful*; therefore, in all cases, in the *first* place, *use* the most *easy* and *mild* means, as there are a sufficiency of them; and those only that are so painful when all others fail.

I have arranged the *index* in such a manner, under proper heads, as to make an easy directory to find any thing you want:—Besides, there is a *Catalogue* of the several *Diseases* which are described and arranged in a methodical manner; so that by referring to *it*, you may know every species of ailment or disease that may come upon your horse;—and then, by examining the *index*, you may find directions for the cure; and also, there will be a Description of the different *medicines* spoken of.

A. FRANKLIN.

Strasburg, Nov. 4, 1803.

THE
AMERICAN FARRIER.

OBSERVATIONS

ON THE

Management of Horses when Travelling.

THE frequent applications that have been made to me for directions concerning the management of horses, previous to, or when on a journey, induces me to give my readers a few short observations on that subject.

It ought always to be remembered, that, when a horse is intended for a journey of any length, and the prospect of continuing it for some time, that he be properly prepared for it, by good feeding, and that he has been in the habitual practice of regular and daily exercise: for, without a due proportion of the latter, no horse can be in proper condition for travelling, or undergoing any fatigue, without danger of being laid up by some acute disease; for which reason it will be obvious, that a horse which is too fat, or full of flesh, or that has

•

been kept long on soft feeding, or newly from the hands of a dealer, or running late at grass, or that has been accustomed to stand much at rest in the stable, or those that are too low of flesh, and are worn out or exhausted by former fatigue, from disease, or from old age, are unfit for this purpose: neither are too young horses fit for a journey, especially when about casting their foal teeth, or before their strength is confirmed, and their bodies seasoned by the habit of labor or exercises. On the other hand, a horse that is rather meagre than fat, and whose flesh is firm from good feeding, and in the habitual practice of undergoing active exercises of labor, has always the best chance of performing a long journey with ease to himself, and with satisfaction to his owner.

For the ease of the horse, and safety of the rider, it is proper to attend particularly to the saddle, that it fit the horse's back properly, that is, it must neither be too wide in the trees, to come forward on the shoulder blades, nor too narrow, so as to pinch and break off or bruise the skin; and that the bolstering or stuffing in the pannel is adapted to the hollow spaces on each side of the spine or ridge of the back; that it lie smooth and equal on every part, the spine excepted, which it ought not to touch or come near in the least, neither on the fore or back part. If it is thus properly fitted, there will be no occasion for a crupper, unless it may be the choice of the rider. The rider must likewise take notice, when on the road, that the stuffing in the saddle pannel does not become too thin, which it will be apt to do, and, if needful, to have it repaired.

Before a horse sets out on a journey, it will be prudent to have him shod some days before hand, in case any accident should happen by driving the nails too near, &c. There is another advantage attending this caution, which is, the shoes become firmer seated on the hoofs, and the clenches and nails rusted, which contributes greatly to keep them firm in their place. If the horse goes too near, so as to cut his legs, either before or behind, that must be provided against in the shoeing.

It is customary to water horses in the morning before they are fed ; but it will be found of more advantage to water them after feeding, as it then more properly dilutes the food that is taken into the stomach ; at the same time it washes the mouth and throat, and prevents or restrains the too sudden return of thirst or desire for water, which occasions an inclination in horses of stopping at every rivulet that comes in the way on their road. But, as horses that stand in a warm stable through the night, and perhaps feeding greedily on hay, are disposed to drink too much water, when led to a watering trough, it will be proper to prevent them drinking too much, by giving them water in a pail by measure ; about half a pailful at once will be sufficient. On their first setting out on the road, they ought not to be too suddenly hurried on, as the stomach and bowels are then too full ; as this fulness goes off, they will naturally mend their paces of themselves : toward the end of the stage, their motion may be restrained by degrees, and brought in as cool as possible ; after they are thoroughly cool and well dressed, they should

then be fed and watered as above. The same rules may be observed at the end of every stage. At night, their legs below the knee, and the hoofs, may be washed with water, and well rubbed afterwards, till the legs are thoroughly dry, when they may be fed, and indulged with more water given them at once than they had through the day. It ought always to be observed, that, when horses come to the end of a stage, if they are very warm, that they be walked about gently till they cool gradually; and never to wash their legs, or any part of their bodies, till they are cool. In hot weather, when the roads are dry and dusty, the washing of horses legs proves very refreshing; when the roads are dirty and wet, it is the readiest method of cleaning them; but they ought always to be well rubbed afterwards.

It may be needful to remind young travelers, that they have their horses shoes inspected at every stage, and, whatever is amiss about them, or the clenches of the nails, rectified; likewise to observe that the saddle has kept its proper place, in order to prevent its injuring the back, or coming forward on the shoulder-blades.

It frequently happens, that the skin of horses, who have not been accustomed to perform long journeys, becomes scalded by the friction of the girths, and likewise on the under part of the breast, between the fore legs, where the skin is loose and full of wrinkles. This proceeds entirely from neglect, in not cleaning the sand and dirt from those parts, but suffering it to cloat among the hair, it collects in lumps,

and, by the continued friction in the horse's moving, it produces the above effect, which is attended with pain to the animal, and causes a contracted step in his going; and when it is not taken notice of in proper time, the parts become inflamed and swelled, which proves a great hindrance to the horse's travelling. When the hair is fretted off by the girths, they should be washed clean from the sand and dirt, and dried thoroughly before a fire, after the horse is done up for the night. At the same time it will be proper to cause the sand and gravel to be picked out from below the shoes, and to wash out the smaller particles of sand and gravel that are apt to lodge there, as in weak hoofs it frequently occasions lameness. One great advantage that arises to the hoofs from being frequently washed and moistened with water, especially in dry warm weather is, that it keeps them cool, a state which is most natural to them, and which is much more beneficial than all the stopping and greasing which at present is so much in use. But, as this simple process of washing the hoofs with water only, diminishes the hostler's fees, at the same time that it creates more labor and trouble, he ought by no means be a sufferer; the owner will in the end be a gainer by the exchange.

It is likewise proper to observe, that the saddle girths be not drawn too tight, especially on the belly; if the fore or point girths on the breast be drawn tolerably tight, that will be sufficient of itself, if the saddle fits properly, to keep it in its place. The girths on the belly, however tight they may be drawn, soon

slacken as the bowels empty, and they only serve to give pain to the animal, by confining the viscera, and occasion a difficulty of breathing on the horse's first setting out, when the belly is distended with food ; besides, in round barrell'd or round bellied horses, especially if the belly is big, the back girths, the tighter they are drawn, contribute to push the saddle on the shoulders, in spite of every means that can be devised to keep it in its proper place.

Road-horses, on long stages, at any halting-place, about the middle of the stage, should get a little oat-meal mixed in about half a pail of water, to refresh them. This not only quenches their thirst, by washing their mouths, &c. when the roads are dusty, but it invigorates them to perform the remainder of the stage. The oat-meal prevents any bad consequences that might arise to them from giving cold water when they are heated, especially in such a small quantity at once.

It frequently happens on bye-roads, or little frequented inns and baiting places, especially towards the end of harvest, that horses are fed with green oats in the sheaf, newly taken from the field, for want of other feeding ; that is extremely hurtful to them, as it occasions faintishness, &c. and frequently produces a diarrhœa or scouring, attended with great weakness. If, possible, in such situations, it would be prudent to get oat-meal for them, and mix it with a small quantity of water, only as much as is sufficient to moisten the meal, so as to prevent it blowing away by their breath in feeding. When the oats are too new and softish, oat-meal should always be got for them,

if possible, in their stead, and given as above directed. Bread, of different kinds, is likewise a good substitute in place of new or bad grain; especially the coarse wheaten bread, formerly so much used to horses, and known by the name of *horse bread*. But, whatever kind can be got, if they will not eat it by itself, it may be rubbed down between the hands, or beat in a trough, and mixed with oat-meal. This will make very good feeding for horses, and which most of them will eat. A little extra trouble and care, in such cases, ought not to be grudged for the benefit of so useful and valuable creatures, on such emergencies.

Horses on a journey, from the strong perspiration they undergo, and the constant feeding on dry food, are apt to become too costive. This ought to be guarded against, by giving them occasionally a mash of scalded bran, boiled barley, or malt, either by themselves, or mixed in their oats, by way of a double feed. When a horse shews an inclination to stale on the road, he should always be allowed to stand still for that purpose; and, if he has any difficulty in staling, an ounce of nitre may be given in his food for a few nights following. It is of consequence to attend to this discharge, and also that by stool, as inattention to either of these frequently proves the source of many disorders.

Before I conclude this article on travelling, I would beg leave to prefer a petition in favor of the poor animal who is the subject of this treatise, and which is, the allowing him a little more time to perform the task required of him; fifteen minutes more than what is allow-

ed at present to perform a stage of as many miles, would save the lives of a number of horses yearly, besides the numbers that are lamed, and otherwise rendered useless by such severity.

When the roads, &c. are covered with ice, it becomes necessary to have the heels of the shoes turned up, and frequently sharpened, in order to prevent horses from slipping and falling. As this cannot be done without the frequent moving of the shoes, which breaks and destroys the crust of the hoofs where the nails are drove, to prevent this, I have always recommended to those who were willing to be at the expence, to have steel points screwed into the heels or quarters of each shoe, which might be taken out and put in occasionally.

The method of doing this precisely, is, first to have the shoes fitted to the shape of the hoof, then to make a small round hole in the extremity of each heel, or in the quarters, about three-eighths of an inch in diameter, or more, in proportion to the breadth and size of the shoe; in each of these holes a screw is to be made; the steel points are likewise to have on them, exactly fitted to that in the shoes. Care must be taken that the screw on the points is no longer, when they are screwed into the shoe, than the thickness of the latter. The steel points are to be made sharp; they may either be made square, triangular, or chisel pointed, as may be most agreeable; the height of the point above the shoe should not exceed half an inch for a saddle-horse; they may be made higher for a draught-horse.

*General Observations, Helps and Advertisements,
for any Man when he goeth about to Buy a
Horse.*

THERE is nothing more difficult or intricate in all the art of horsemanship, than to set down constant and uncontrollable resolutions, by which to bind every man's mind to an unity of consent in the buying of an horse : for, according to the old adage, *That which is one man's meat is another man's poison* ; what one likes, another dislikes. But to proceed according to the rule of reason, the precepts of the ancients, and the modern practice of our present conceived opinions, I will, as freely as I can, shew you those observations and advertisements which may strengthen and fortify you in any hard and difficult choice.

First, therefore, you are to observe, in buying a horse, this principal consideration, viz. the end and purpose for which you want him ; as whether for the wars, running, hunting, travelling, draught, or burthen ; every one having their several characters and their several faces, both of beauty and uncomeliness.

But because there is but one truth, and one perfection, I will, under the description of the perfect horse, that is untainted, shew all the imperfections and attaintures that either nature or mischance can put upon the horse of greatest deformity.

Let me then advise you that intend to buy a horse, to acquaint yourself well with all the true shapes and excellencies which belong to an horse, whether it be in his natural and true proportion, or in any accidental or outward in-

crease or decrease of any limb or member ; and from their contraries, to gather all things whatsoever that may give dislike or offence.

To begin therefore with the first principles of buying, you shall understand, that they are divided into two special heads : the one general, the other particular.

The general rule of buying, is, first, the end for which you buy, then his breed or generation, his colour, his face and his stature, and these are said to be general ; because the first, which is the end for which you buy, is a thing shut up only in your own breast.

The other, which is his breed, you must either take it from faithful report, your own knowledge, or from some known and certain characters, by which one strain or one country is distinguished from another ; as the Neapolitan is known by his hoop nose, the Spaniard by his small limbs, the Barbary by his fine head, the Dutch by his rough legs, the English by his general strong knitting together, &c. and of divers others.

As for his colour, although there is no colour exempt utterly from goodness, for I have seen good of all, yet there are some better reputed than others, as the dapple-grey for beauty, the brown-bay for service, the black silver-hairs for courage, and the lyard or true mixed roan for countenance. As for the sorrel, the black without white, and the unchangeable iron-grey, they are reputed choleric ; the bright-bay, the flea-bitten, and the black with white marks, are sanguinists ; the blank-white, the yellow-dun, the kite-glewed, and the py-bald, are phlegma-

tic ; and the chesnut, the mouse-dun, the red-bay, and the blue-grey, are melancholy.

Now for his pace, which is either trot, amble, rack or gallop, you must refer it to the end also for which you buy ; as if he be for the wars, hunting, running, or your own private disposition, then the trot is most tolerable. And this motion you shall know by a cross-moving of the horse's limbs, as when the far fore leg and the far hinder leg move and go forward in one instant. And in this motion, the neater the horse taketh his limbs from the ground, the opener, the evenner, and the shorter he treadeth, the better his pace ; for to take up his feet sternly, shews stumbling and lameness ; to tread narrow or cross, shews interfering or falling ; to step uneven, shews toil and weariness ; to tread long, shews over-reaching.

Now, if you buy for ease, or long travelling, then an amble is required ; and this motion is contrary to a trot ; for now both the feet on one side must move equally together ; that is, his far fore leg, and the far hinder leg : and this motion must go just, large, smooth, and nimble ; for to tread false takes away all ease ; to tread short, rides no ground ; to tread rough, shews rolling ; and to tread nimbly, shews a false pace that never continueth, as also lameness.

If you buy for hunting, for gallopping on the highway, for post, hackney, or the like, then a racking pace is required ; and this motion is the same that ambling is, only it is in a swifter time and shorter tread ; although it does not travel so quick, yet it is a little more easy.

Now, to all these parts must be joined a gallop (which naturally every trotting and racking horse hath) the ambler is a little unapt thereunto, because the motions are both one, so that being put to a greater swiftness of pace than naturally he hath been acquainted withal, he handles his legs confusedly and out of order; but being tamed gently, and made to know and understand the motion, he will as well undertake it as any trotting horse whatsoever. Now, in a good gallop, you are to observe these virtues:

First, that the horse which taketh his feet nimbly from the ground, but doth not raise them high, that neither rolleth, nor beats himself, that stretcheth out his fore legs, follows nimbly with his hinder, and neither cutteth under the knee, (which we call the swift cut) nor crosseth, nor claps one foot upon another, and ever leadeth with his far fore feet, and not with the near;

This horse is said ever to gallop most comely, and most true, and is the fittest for speed, or any other like employment.

If he gallop round, and raise his fore feet, he is then said to gallop strongly, but not swiftly, and is fittest for the great saddle, the wars and strong encounters.

If he gallop slow, yet sure, he will serve for the highway; but if he labor his feet confusedly, and gallop painfully, he is good for no galloping service; besides, it shews some obscure lameness.

Lastly, touching his stature, it must be referred to your own judgment, and the end for

which you buy him ; ever observing, that the biggest and strongest are fittest for strong occasions, as great burthens, strong draughts, and double carriage ; the middle size for pleasure, and general employments ; and the least for ease, street-walks, and summer-hackneys.

Now, touching the particular rule of purchasing, it is contained in the discovery of natural deformities, accidental, outward or inward hidden mischiefs, which are so many, yea, infinite, that it is a world of work to explain them ; yet, for satisfaction's sake, I will, in as methodical a manner as I can, briefly, and according to the best conceived opinions, shew what can be observed on this occasion.

First, therefore, when an horse is brought unto you to buy, being satisfied of his breed, his pace and colour, then see him stand naked before you, and placing yourself before his face, take a strict view of his countenance, and the chearfulness thereof, for it is an excellent glass wherein to see his goodness : as thus, if his ears be small, thin, sharp, pricked, and moving, and if they be long, yet well set on, it is a mark of beauty, goodness, and mettle ; but if they be thick, laved, or lolling, wide set on, and unmoving, then are they signs of dullness, doggedness, and ill nature.

If his face be clean, his forehead swelling outward, the mark or feather in his face set high, as above his eyes, or at the top of his eyes ; if he has a white star, or a white rach of an indifferent size, and even placed, or a white snip on his nose, all are marks of beauty and goodness ; but if his face be fat, cloudy or scowling, his forehead flat as a trencher,

which we call mare-faced, the mark in his forehead stand low, as under his eyes ; if his star or rach stand awry or in an evil posture, or instead of a snip, his nose be raw and unhairy, or his face generally bald, all are signs of deformity : if his eyes be round, bright, black, shining, staring, or starting from his head ; if the black of the eye fill the pit, or outward circumference, so that in the moving none (or very little) of the white appeareth ; all are signs of beauty, goodness and metal ; but if his eyes be uneven, and of a wrinkled proportion ; if they be little, (which we call pig-eyed) are uncomely, and signs of weakness : if they be red and fiery, take heed of moon-eyes, which is the next door to blindness ; if white and walled, it shews a weak sight, and unnecessary starting or finding of boggards ; if with white specks, take heed of the pearl, pin and web ; if they water or shew bloody, it shews bruises ; and if they matter, they shew old over-riding and festered rheums, or violent strains ; if they look dead or dull, or all hollow and much sunk, take heed of blindness ; at the best the beast is of an old decrepid generation ; if the black fill not the pit, but the white is always appearing, or if in moving the white, the black be seen in equal quantity, it is a sign of weakness and dogged disposition.

If handling of his cheeks or chaps, you find the bones lean and thin, the space wide between them, the thropple or wind-pipe big as you can grip, and the void place without knots or kernels, and generally the jaws so open, that the neck seemeth to couch within them ; they are all excellent signs of great wind, courage and soundness of head and body ; but if the chaps

be fat and thick, the space between them closed up with gross substance, and the thropple little, all are signs of short wind, and much inward foulness ; if the void place be full of knots and kernels, take heed of the strangles or glanders, at least the horse is not without a foul cold.

If his jaws be so strait, that his neck swellth about them ; if it be no more than natural, it is only an uncomely sign of strait wind about them ; if it be no more but natural, it is only an uncomely sign of strait wind and pur-siness, or grossness : but if the swelling be long and close to his chops like a whet-stone, then take heed of the uvies, or some other unnatural imposthume.

If his nostrils be open, dry, wide and large, so as upon any straining the very inward redness is discovered ; and if his muzzle be small, his mouth deep, and his lips equally meeting, they are all good signs of wind, heat and courage ; but if his nostrils be strait, his wind is little ; if his muzzle be gross, his spirit is dull —if his mouth be shallow, he will never carry a bit well ; and if his upper lip will not reach his nether, old age or infirmity hath marked him for carrion ; and if his nose be moist and dropping, if it be clear water, it is a cold ; if foul matter, then beware of the glanders ; if both nostrils run, it is hurtful ; but if one, then dangerous.

Touching his teeth and their virtues, they are at large set down in another place.

From his head look down to his breast, and look that it be broad, out-setting, and adorned with many feathers, for that shews strength and

endurance. The little breast is uncomely, and shews weakness; the narrow breast is apt to stumble, fall and interfere before; and the breast that is hidden inward, and wanteth the beauty and division of many feathers, shews a weak armed heart, and a breast that is unwilling and unfit for any toil or strong labor.

Next look down from his elbow to his knee, and see that those fore-thighs be rush-grown, well horned within, sinewy flesh, and without swelling, for they are good signs of strength; the contrary shews weakness, and are unnatural.

Then look on his knees, that they carry an equal and even proportion, be clean, sinewy, and close knit, for they are good and comely; if one be bigger and rounder than another, the horse hath received mischief; if they be gross, the horse is gouty; or if they have scars, or hair-broken, it is a true mark of stumbling and a perpetual falling.

From his knees look down his legs to his pasterns, and if you find his legs clean, fat and sinewy, and the inward bought of his knee without a seam, or hair-broken, then he shews good shape and soundness; but if on the inside there are excretions, if under his knee are scabs on the inside, it is the swift-cut, and he will ill endure galloping; if above his pasterns on the inside you find scabs, it shews interfering. But if the scabs be generally over his legs, it is either extreme foul keeping, or a species of the mange; if his legs be fat, round and fleshy, he will never endure labour; if in the inward bought of his knee you find seams, scabs, or hair-broken, it shews a malender, which is a cankerous ulcer.

Look then on his pasterns, the first must be clean and well knit together, the other must be short, strong and upright standing; for if the first be big or swell'd, take heed of the sinew-strain and gurdng; if the other be long weak, or bending, the limbs will hardly carry, the body without tiring.

For the hoofs in general, they would be black, smooth, tough, rather a little long than round and hollow, and full sounding: for a white hoof is tender, and carries a shoe ill; a rough, gross, seamed hoof shews old age or overheating: brittle hoofs will carry no shoe; an extraordinary round hoof is ill for foul ways or deep hunting: a flat hoof that is pummiced shews foundering; and an hoof that is empty and hollow sounding, shews a decayed inward part, by reason of some wound or dry founder. As for the crownet of the hoof, if the hair be smooth and close, and the flesh fat and even, all is perfect; but if the hair be staring, the skin scabbed, the flesh rising, then look for a ring-bone, a crown-scab, or like mischief.

After this, stand by his side, and first look to the setting on of his head, and see that it stand neither too high nor too low, but in a direct line; and that his neck be small at the setting on, and long, growing deeper, and deeper, till it come to the shoulders, with an high, strong and thin crest; and his mane thin, long, soft, and somewhat curling, for these are beautiful characters; whereas to have the head ill set on, is the greatest deformity; to have any bigness or swelling in the nape of the neck, shews the poll-evil, or beginning of a fistula. To have a short thick neck, like a bull, to have it falling

at the withers, to have a low, a weak, a thick or falling crest, shews want both of strength and mettle; and to have much hare on the mane, shews intolerable dulness; to have it too thin shews fury, and to have none, or to shed, shews the worm in the mane, the itch, or else mange.

Look then to the chine of his back, that it be broad, even and straight, his ribs well compassed, and bending outward, his fillets upright, strong and short, and not above four fingers between his last rib and his knuckle-bone. Let his body be well let down, yet hidden without his ribs, and let his stones be close thrust up to his body, for all these are marks of good perfection. Whereas to have his chine narrow, he will never carry a saddle without wounding; and to have it bending, or saddle-backt, shews weakness; to have his ribs fat, there is no liberty for wind; to have his fillets hanging long or weak, he will never climb an hill well, nor carry burthen; and to have his belly clung up and gant, or his stones hanging down close or aside, they are both signs of sickness, tenderness, or foundering in the body, and unaptness for labor. Then look upon his buttocks, and see that it be round, full, plump, and in an even level with his body; or if long, that it be well raised behind, and spread forth at the setting on of the tail, for these are comely and beautiful. The narrow pun-buttock, the hog, or swine-rump, and the falling or downlet-buttock, are full of deformity, and shew both an injury in nature, and that they are neither fit nor becoming for pad, foot-cloth, or pillow.

Then look to his hinder thighs, or gascoins, that they be well let down, even to the middle

joint, thick, brawny, full and swelling, for that is a great argument of strength and goodness; whereas the lean, lank, slender thigh, shews disability and weakness. Then look upon the middle joint behind, and see that it be nothing but skin and bone, veins and sinews, is rather a little bending than too strait, then it is perfect as it should be; but if it hath chops or sores in the inward bought or bending, then it is a salander.

If the joint be swelled generally all over, then he hath gotten a blow or bruise; if the swelling be particular, as in the plot or hollow part, or on the inside, and the vein full and proud; if the swelling be short, it is a blood-spavin; if hard, it is a bone-spavin; but if the swelling be just behind, below the knuckle, then it is a curb.

Then look to his hinder legs, and if they be clean, fat, and sinewy, then all is well; but if they be fat, they will not endure labor; if they be swelled, the grease is molten into them; if they be scabbed above the pasterns, he hath the scratches; if he has chops under his pasterns, he hath the pains, and none of these but are dangerous and nuisome.

Lastly, for the setting on of his tail, where there is a good buttock, there the tail can never stand ill, and where there is an ill buttock, there the tail can never stand well, for it ought to stand broad, high, flat, and a little touched inward.

Thus I have shewed you true shapes, and true deformities; you may in your choice please your own fancy.

A G E.

How to know the Age of a Horse by his Teeth.

YOU must understand that a horse hath in his head just forty teeth ; that is to say, six great wang teeth above, and six below on one side, and as many on the other, which makes twenty-four, and are called his grinders. Then six above and six below in the fore part of his mouth, which are called gatherers, and make thirty-six. Then four tushes, one above and one below on one side, and one above and one below on the other side, which is just forty.

Now, the first year he hath his foal's teeth, which are only grinders and gatherers, but no tushes ; and they are small, white, and bright to look upon.

The second year he changeth the four foremost teeth in his head, and they will appear browner and bigger than the others.

At three years old he changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no apparent foal's teeth before, but two of each side above, and two below, which are also bright and small.

At four years old he changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more foal's teeth, but one on each side, both above and below.

At five years old his foremost teeth will be all changed ; but then he hath his tushes on each side complete, and the last foal's teeth which he cast, those which come in their place will be hollow, and have a little black speck in the midst, which is called the mark in the horse's mouth, and continueth till he is eight years old.

At six years old, he putteth up his new tushes, near about which you shall see most apparently growing a little circle of new and young flesh at the bottom of the tush; besides, the tush will be white, small, short and sharp.

At seven years old, all his teeth will have their perfect growth, and the mark in the horse's mouth before spoken of will be plainly seen.

At eight years old all his teeth will be full, smooth and plain, the black speck or mark being hardly to be discerned, and his tushes will be more yellow than ordinary.

At nine years his foremost teeth will shew longer, yellower and fouler than at younger years, and his tushes will be bluntish.

At ten years old, in the inside of his upper tushes will be no holes at all to be felt with your fingers, and which, till that age, you shall ever most perfectly feel; besides, the temples of his head will begin to be crooked and hollow.

At eleven years of age, his teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, black and foul; only he will cut even, and his teeth will stand directly opposite one against another.

At twelve years old, his teeth will be long, yellow, black and foul; but then his upper teeth will overreach and hang over his under teeth.

At thirteen years old, his tushes will be worn somewhat close to his chaps (if it be a much ridden horse) otherwise they will be black, foul and long, like the tushes of a bear.

Observation to know the Age of a Horse till he is Seven Years of Age—with Directions for Buying.

EVERY horse has six teeth before in each jaw ; till he is two years and an half old, they are all smooth and uniform on their upper surfaces.

At two years and an half old he sheds the two middle teeth (by the young teeth's rising and forcing the old ones out) which at three years old are replaced by two hollow ones.

When he is about three years and a half old, he sheds two others, one on each side of the two middle ones, which at four years old are replaced by two others.

The sharp single teeth, by some called tusks, begin to appear in the lower jaw when the horse is about three years and a half or four years old. When he is nearly six years old, they are full grown, pointed, and concave in the inside.

When he is four years and a half old, he sheds the two corner teeth, which at five are replaced also with two hollow ones, grooved on the inside ; which groove marks the age precisely.

At six years of age this groove begins to fill up, and disappear ; so do the hollows of the rest of the teeth, which continue till near seven and a half or eight years old, when all the teeth become uniformly full and smooth.

Crafty jockeys will sometimes burn holes in the teeth, to make them appear young, which they call bishoping ; but a discerning eye will soon discover the cheat.

Try before you Buy.—If you meet with a horse you like, and are desirous of buying him, don't fall in love with him before you ride him—for, though he may be handsome, he may start or stumble.

To discover a Stumbler.—If you go to buy of one that knows you, 'tis not unreasonable to desire to ride him for an hour. If refused, you may suspect he has some faults: if not, mount him at the door of the stable where he stands; let him neither feel your spurs, nor see your whip; mount him easily, and when seated, go gently off with a loose rein, which will make him careless; and if he's a stumbler, he'll discover himself presently, especially if the road in which you ride him be any thing rough.

The best horse indeed may stumble (a young one of spirit, if not properly broken in will frequently; and yet if he moves nimbly upon the bit, dividing his legs true, he may become a very good saddle-horse) the best horse, I say, may stumble, but if he springs out, when he stumbles, as if he feared your whip or spur, depend upon it he is an old offender. A horse should never be struck for stumbling or starting: the provocation, I confess, is great; but the fear of correction makes him worse.

In the purchase of a horse, examine four things, his teeth, his eyes, his legs and his wind.

Eyes.—If a horse's eyes are lively and clear, and you can see to the bottom, and the image of your face be reflected from thence, and not from the surface of the body, they are good;

but if muddy, cloudy, or coal black, they are bad.

Legs.—If his legs are not broken, nor stand bending and trembling forward (which is called knuckling) his legs may be good; but if he steps short and digs his toes in the ground, 'tis a sign he will knuckle. In short, if the hoofs be pretty flat and not curled, you need not fear a founder.

Wind.—If his flanks beat even and slow, his wind may be good; but if they heave double and irregular, or if (while he stands in the stable) he blows at the nostrils, as if he had just been galloping, they are signs of a broken wind. Deceitful dealers have a draught which they sometimes give, to make a horse breathe regularly in the stable: the surest way therefore to judge of his wind, is to give him a good brushing gallop, and 'tis ten to one, if his wind be broke or even touched, that he will cough and wheeze very much, and no medicine can prevent his doing so.

A Draught-horse.—A horse with thick shoulders and a broad chest, laden with flesh, hanging too forward and heavily projecting over his knees and feet, is fitter for a collar than a saddle.

A Saddle-horse.—A horse with thin shoulders and a flat chest, whose fore-feet stand boldly forward and even, his neck rising semi-circular from the points of those thin shoulders to his head, may justly be said to have a light forehand, and be fitter for a saddle than a collar. As most horses in the hands of farmers are drawn while they are young, which

notwithstanding their make, occasions them to move heavily. If you desire a nimble-footed horse, choose one that has never drawn.

In buying a horse enquire into four other things, viz. biting, kicking, stopping and starting.

A horse may be sound, though guilty of all four, which a man can hardly discover by barely looking on him; so I refer you to his keeper.

When you are buying, it is common for the owner to say in praise of his horse, that he has neither splint, spavin, nor wind-gall.

SPLINT.

The splint is a fixed callous excrescence or hard knot, growing upon the flat of the in or outside (and sometimes both) of the shank bone; a little under, and not far from the knee, and may be seen and felt.

SPAVIN.

The spavin is of the same nature, and appears, in like manner, on the instep bone behind, not far below the hoof.

To take it off, beat the bone with a bleeding stick, and rub it: then anoint it with the *oil of origanum*, tie a wet cloth about it, and with a hot brick applied to it, soak in the oil, till it be dry.

WINDGALL.

Windgalls are several little swellings just above the fetlock joints of all the four legs; they seem, when felt, to be full of wind or

jelly, but they never lame a horse ; the splint and spavin always do. They all three proceed from one and the same cause, which is hard riding, travelling too far in one day ; or carrying too great a weight when young.



ORDER HOW TO BREED HORSES.

Choice of your Stallion and stud Mares.

FIRST and principally you must foresee that your stallion and stud mares be both of good and lively nature, and not subject to any natural diseases. For as heavy horses and mares will breed colts of roilish and heavy nature, so if they be infected with any natural disease, their colts for the most part will be troubled with the same disease.

Wild Mares are not best to keep for the Race.

IT would be well done to handle all your stud mares, and make them tame and easy, whereby, besides the commodity you may have of their work, which cannot hurt their taming if they be soberly handled, you may be sure at all times to remove them from one pasture to another, to bring them to be covered, and to take their colts from them without great trouble, whereas wild mares are not only cumbersome to keep, but also oftentimes do destroy the colts in their bellies with their rashness, when you should handle them or any of their fellows.

At what Age your Mare is to be Handled and Covered.

THE best age to take up your mare to make her tame, and to break her, is when she shall be two years old and the vantage; and so you may the year following, when she shall be fully three years old and upward, put her to your horse to be covered, which in my opinion is the best age to put her first to the horse, although some writers are of opinion, that it is best that she be first covered at two years old.

The best Age for Horse or Mare to get or bear Colts, and how many Years they will continue good.

THE best age for horse or mare to get or bear colts, is, for the mare, from three years old till ten: and for the horse, from four or five years till twelve; and after that age the colts of them wax heavy, weak and slothful.

What time of the Year is best to Wean the Colts from their Dams.

THE best time of the year to wean your colts is at candlemass, or shrove-tide, after the time as your colt is foaled; wherein you must use much diligence; for if your colt be not well weaned, well summered, and well wintered, the three first years, and namely the first year when he moaneth for his dam, he shall seldom or never come to be a good horse. And therefore when you wean your colts, you must bring them

to some house ordained for the same purpose, clean out of the hearing of their dams ; wherein they must be pinned, and not to come abroad the first fourteen days, out of the hearing of their dams : whereunto you must have pasture adjoining, wherein they may play, and feed every day after the fourteen days past, from the time you begin to wean them till grass be fully sprung in May; & put them into some such pasture, as commonly your milk cows are fed in, where they may neither, feeding in high and rank grass, hurt their reins, or grow thick necked, nor for want of feeding hinder their growth, but feeding in a short sweet grass, may prove well till they have forgotten their dams.

What Feeding is best for Colts, from and after two Years old.

IT is a general opinion, that wet lying and want of feed in the winter, and old rank feeding in summer, from and after two years old, doth mar the most part of our whole breed ; which, in my opinion, well ordered, would breed the best of horses for all kind of service, of the whole earth ; for as wet lying and want of good feeding in the winter, doth breed a heartless ill shapen horse, subject to all cold and watry diseases both in his body and limbs ; so over rank feeding in the summer, chiefly from two years old, and after, doth breed an evil reined, and a slothful horse, ever ready (being over laden with fat flesh) to be more foundered, and to catch the glanders and cough upon every cold. And therefore your best method of feeding in the summer, is where he

may have a large walk, and hungry short feeding, and not yet so bare, but that he may have a sufficiency to keep him in good flesh.

Why Horses being taken up so young are not good.

THE cause why our horses are taken up so young, as I have heard sundry of our chief horse-masters say, is, that our horses being great and well fed, if they should run till they should come to their full strength, would be so sturdy and mischievous to break, that they would rather destroy themselves than be made tame; which in my fancy is but a vain opinion. For there was never so sturdy nor so wilful a horse, which would not be tame and easy to handle, with watching and hunger, within one month at the farthest, if his keeper will use diligence.

The way to Handle a sturdy Horse.

THAT may most conveniently be brought to pass, if at the first coming into the house, before he will suffer his keeper to handle him and to take up his feet, he do put no meat before him, but let him take all his feeding at his keeper's hands, and so shall you make him gentle and tame without stripes or striving; and the order before appointed in his breaking, being the colt of a tame mare, and fed some part of every winter at hand in the house, will acquaint him with the man, and make him always most tame before he be taken up; which

colt shall seldom prove a fearful or a blenching horse.

N. B. By handling a colt often before and after it is weaned, till the time it is fit for use, you will not find half the difficulty in breaking it you otherwise would. You may also, after it is a year old, often put a bridle and saddle on it, with about fifteen pounds of grain in a bag, and walk him up and down the yard with it on.

The using of Horses after they are handled.

AND, for conclusion ; Whoever doth use to keep his horse bridled after riding till he be in good temper, and almost cold, and doth not give him water nor meat, being hot, neither doth ride him fast upon a full stomach, shall seldom or never have his horse lame or sick, if he is raised as aforesaid, before he is taken up.

What feeding is best in Winter for Mares, and Weanlings, of two Years old.

FOR the winter feeding you must use one order for your mares, and weanlings of two years old in several places, which is a hovel or house made for them adjoining to your winter pasture, wherein you must sometime in the evil weather, in a rack made for that purpose, give them one fodder, and be sure that they be brought into that house every night that is like to prove wet, but in the frosty days and nights it is best to pin them abroad.

You must in any wise keep one pasture nigh to the house that you feed your mare-colts in the winter time, which pasture may not be fed in before shrove-tide, because that time and the middle of May (before which, grass is not sufficiently sprung in most places for horses to feed on) is the most time of danger to hunger-bane of all the year. In which time, if your colts growing all the summer following, will make your colt-mares so bare, that they shall not be able to foal, nor give their colts sufficient suck.

At what Age Colts may be Broke.

WHEN your colt hath been raised as aforesaid, the best age in my opinion to take him up to break, is, when he shall be full four years old ; and have good close ground to keep him in, for then will his joints and sinews be strong and well knit, his hoofs ever tough, and not brittle, his eye-sight good, his chine strong, so that you cannot hurt him, neither in breaking nor in reasonable riding ; besides, he will last a good horse till he be twenty-four or twenty-five years old : whereas, if you will take him up at two or three years old, as we commonly do, you shall find him afterwards many times blind, brittle hoofed, weak backed, full of wind-galls and splints, and shew himself to be an old stiff horse before he come to be ten years old, as the most part of horses do.

INFIRMITIES.

Certain Infallible Helps and Cures for those Infirmitieſ which are moſt dangerous, and do commonly attend all Horſes, eſpecially the Running-horſe.

WHENSOEVER upon any occaſion you ſhall find your horſe to droop in countenance, to forſake his meat, or to ſhew any apparent ſign of ſickneſs; if they be not great, you may forbear to let blood, becauſe where blood is ſpent, the ſpirits are ſpent alſo, and they are not eaſily recovered; but if the ſigns be great and dangerous, then by all means let blood inſtantly; and for three mornings together, the horſe being faſting, give him half an ounce of the powder called *diahexaple*, brewed either in a pint of the pureſt and fineſt ſyrup of ſugar, being two degrees above the ordinary molasses, or for want thereof molaeses will ſerve the turn, or where all are wanting, you may take a pint either of *cardus water*, or elſe *dragon water*, or a quart of ſweeteſt and ſtrongeſt *alewort*; and this muſt be given him in a horn, and if the horſe have ability of body, ride him in ſome warm place after it, and let him faſt near two hours more. At noon give him a ſweet maſh, clothe warm, and let him touch nothing.

Now for the exact and true making of this powder, which I call *diahexaple*, becauſe no man, that I know, either apothecaries or others, doth at this day make it truly, partly becauſe it is an experiment lately come to my knowledge by conference with learned phyſicians, and partly becauſe our medicine-makers are in horſe phyſic leſs curious than they ſhould be;

world abundance of false mixtures ; which both deceive the honest horse-master, kill the harmless horse, and disgrace the well-meaning farrier.

To repair all which, I will here set down at large the true manner of making this admirable powder, together with the virtues and operations thereof.

Take of the grains of *paradice*, of *ivory* and *myrrh*, of the roots of *enula campana*, of *turmeric* and *gentian*, of each a like quantity ; then beat and searse them into a subtile powder, and give the horse such a quantity, as is before directed. This resisteth the putrefaction of humors, comforts and strengthens the inward parts, opens obstructions, helps the lungs, and if taken in time, not only recovers the horse, but preventeth many other distempers.



How to Order Feed, and Keep any Horse for Pleasure, Hunting or Travel.

I WOULD have your keeper of these ordinary horses to rise early in the morning, by the spring of day, or before, according to the season of the year, and to sift the horse the quantity of three pints of good old dry oats, and to put to them an handful or two of spelted beans, hulls and all, and so give them to the horse.

After he hath eaten them, let him dress him according to the order of good horsemanship.

That is, first curry with the comb, then dust, then curry with the brush, then dust, then rub

with wet hands, after with a clean woollen cloth, after with a clean linen cloth, then pick all obscure places. Lastly, comb down the main and tail. Then saddle him, and ride him forth to water, then warm him both before and after very moderately, so bring him home dry without sweat.

Then clothe him up after you have rubbed his head, body and legs, and let him stand on his bridle more than an hour; then give him the former quantity of provender, and the same kind.

After he hath eaten his provender, give him into his rack a pretty bundle of hay, and so let him rest till after dinner.

When you have dined, give him the former quantity of provender, and the same kind, and so let him rest till the evening; only renew his hay, if there be occasion.

At evening dress him well, as in the morning; then ride him forth to water, and do as you did in the morning.

When you come home, and have clothed him up, let him stand on his bridle as before; then give him the former quantity of provender, and so let him rest till nine of the clock at night; at which time give him the former quantity of provender, and a pretty bundle of hay, and so let him rest till the morning.

This you shall do concerning his ordinary keeping at home, where the horse hath rest, and that you may dispose of hours as you please—but if you be either in travel or sport, or other occasion, so that you cannot observe these particular times, then you must divide

the main and whole quantity of meat into fewer parts and greater quantities, and give them at the best conveniency ; ever observing to give the least quantity before travel, as a third part before mounting, and the two others after you come to rest.

Nor would I have you to distract your mind with any doubt or amazement, because I prescribe you five several times of feeding in one day, as if it should either overcharge you, [or overfeed your horse ; questionless there is no such matter, when you look into the true proportion ; for it cannot be denied, but whosoever is worthy of a good horse, or good means to keep a good horse, cannot allow him less than one peck a day : nay, the carrier, carter, poulter and pack-horse, will allow half a peck at a watering, and this allowance, which I set down, comes to no more ; for fifteen pints of oats, and one pint of spelt beans up heaped, make two gallons, and that is one peck. Now, to give it at twice, fills the stomach more, makes the digestion worse, and the appetite weak ; whereas to give less, but more often, the stomach is ever craving, the digestion always ready, and the appetite never wanting ; so that health (without disorder) can never be a stranger.

Therefore, once again, thus much for ordinary keeping.

But if you intend to give an heat, as to hunt, gallop, travel, or the like, then observe all your former observations, only the night before, give him little or no hay at all,

In the morning early before his heat, and before his dressing, give him three or four handfuls of clean sifted oats, washed either in strong ale or beer. Then dress him, saddle him, and give him his heat.

But if it be sudden and violent, then let it be when the horse hath emptied himself pretty well.

After his heat rub him very well, and bring dry into the stable.

Then after he is clothed up warm, let him stand on his bridle at least two hours; then give him a little bundle of hay to tear out upon his bridle, and an hour after feed him as hath been before shewed; only with the first oats give him an handful or two of hempseed, well dusted and mixed.

At night warm him a little water; then an hour after give him his provender, and a pretty bundle of hay, and so let him rest till the next morning.

The next morning do all those things as in his ordinary keeping.

Let him stand on litter both night and day; yet change it often, and keep the place clean.

If you intend to travel or journey in the morning, then give him no hay, or but little in the morning.

In journeying ride moderately the first hour or two; but after, according to your occasions. Water before you come to your inn, if possible—but if you cannot, then give warm water at the inn after the horse is fully cooled.

Trotter's oil is an excellent ointment, being applied very warm, and well chafed in, to keep your horses limbs and sinews nimble, and to help stiffness and lameness.

Neither wash your horse nor walk him ; for the first endangereth foundering in the body or feet, and breedeth all surfeits ; the latter is the ground of all strong colds, which turn to glanders and rottenness ; but if necessity compel you to either, as foul ways and strong stays, then rather wash your horses legs with pails of water at your stable door, than to endanger him in any pond or river.

And for walking, rather sit on your horse's back to keep his spirits stirring, than to lead him in hand, and with dull spirits to receive all manner of mischief.

This I think sufficient for clean and ordinary keeping.



MILK,—HOW TO PRODUCE.

How to breed Milk in Kine.

IF your cow's milk, after she has calved, comes not down, take some *coriander* and *anniseeds*, (for want of anniseed, fennelseed will do) any quantity you please ; pound the seeds very fine and put them into a quart of strong *posset* drink, made with beer, and give her a quart two or three mornings ; which thing alone will beget great and wonderful increase of milk. It will assuredly cause it to spring and come down in abundance. Proved.



For Cows that do not Clean well, or a great while before they do.

I CAN find no certain remedy as yet laid down by authors in order to provoke and bring away

the cleaning speedily. I have been credibly informed that those things underneath are very good and infinitely helpful in these cases: take three *rattles* from the rattles-nake, pound them fine, and give it in mulled cider, with store of ginger. The eggs must be well beaten, shells and all. This I find the most certain. Or take of *tansey roots*, what quantity you like, and boil them in spring water, as much as you may think sufficient for a good drench; then take three or four *eggs*, beaten well, shells and all, and add thereto *soot* and *ginger* a good quantity, mingle all together, and sweeten it with molasses; being blood-warm, give it the cow in the manner of a drench, which has been found to be very helpful in such cases. Others boil *savin*, and gives the cow the decoction in a mash of bran and malt, and says it is an immediate remedy.



WORMS.

For the Worms in Cattle.

THE signs are, they will look wild in their eyes, run to and fro bawling, also run at people: their veins are large and full, which demonstrate it to be the worms. The cure is, first bleed in the neck, and catch the blood in a pail; add store of salt to the blood, and stir it well with a stick to keep it from clotting; then take a pretty quantity of melted hog's lard and some molasses, and stir them in the blood and salt; then give it the beast as a drench; two hours after the beast has taken the drench, take of *rum* one gill, of *gunpowder* a large spoonful, shake and stir all toge-

ther ; empty it into the beast, and this will cure. Proved.



SOUND,—TO KNOW IF CATTLE BE.

GRIP them on the back with your hand, behind the fore shoulder, and if not sound they will shrink back, and almost fall down ; on the contrary, if sound, they will not shrink in the least. Proved.



FLUX CHOLIC, &c.

For the Disease in the Guts in Cattle, if it be the Flux, Cholic, or any such like thing..

IF at any time your beast be troubled with the cholic or belly-ache, or a gnawing of the guts, the signs will be apparent ; it will speedily give ease if you boil good store of *sweet oil* in the water it drinks. For the bloody flux, give the beast some powder of *wood rose* seeds well dried and well bruised, brewed with a quart of *ale*, and it will cure him. Proved.



COUGH.

For an old Cough in Cattle.

A CERTAIN cure is, to steep two pound of *hysop* in half a gallon of spring water, made thick with ground *pease*, or good wheat bran, or fine wheat and the roots of *leeks*, clean washed and beat well together, given the beast fasting. You may also bruise common *garlic* with *dragon water*, new *ale* and *butter*, any quantity you think proper, and being blood-warm, give it the beast, and repeat it as you see occasion requires. Proved.

INWARD DISEASE.

For any inward Disease in Cattle.

TAKE a handful of *wormwood*, and as much *rue*, boil them in a quart of *ale*, let it be strained, put into it two spoonfuls of the juice of *garlic*, as much *houseleek*, and as much *London treacle*; make it blood-warm, mix them well together, and give it the beast, and you shall in a short time see the virtue of it against any inward disease in cattle.



MILK,—HOW TO PRODUCE.

For a Cow that hath newly calved wanting Milk.
ANNISEEDS boiled and given in a warm mash to a cow that has newly calved, being poor and without milk, is very good for the increase thereof. *Colewort* leaves, boiled or raw, will do the like. Also, *barley* and *fennel-seeds*, boiled, is exceeding good. Proved.



OVERFLOWING OF THE GALL.

For the overflowing of the Gall in Cattle.

IF the skin and eyes of your beast look yellow, it is a true sign of the overflowing of the gall; the cure is, first bleed in the neck; take about two quarts of blood; afterwards for three mornings fasting, give this drench: Take of *sweet milk* two pints, of *saffron* and *turmeric* a middling quantity, mix all together, and give it, and it will speedily help. Proved.



GRAVEL OR STONE.

To help Cattle that cannot Piss.

TAKE *cardus* a good quantity, and steep it in *white wine* a whole night; then strain it and

give it your beast. You may also take *sow-thistle* and *anniseeds*, or *fennelseeds*, a good quantity, bruise the seed well, two or three *onions* sliced, steep all together in clear *cider*, or *white wine*, all night or longer; then strain it and give it your beast. It will force urine and increase appetite. Proved.

~~~~~ POISON OR VENOM.

For an Ox or Cow that has accidentally taken Venom.

YOUR ox or cow will commonly gape and eat no meat, stand and hold their heads down and mourn. If they have eaten any venomous grass or such like, give them to swallow down a middling large white *onion*, bruised well, mixed with *vinegar*; but before you give it, be sure you rub their mouths and tongues well with it—you may add *salt* to the *onion* and *vinegar*.

Proved.

~~~~~ SWELLED, OR GOURDED LEGS.

For Swelled or Gourded Legs, whether it be by reason of the Grease falling into them, or other accident, as Scratches, Pains, Mules, &c.

IF your horse's legs be swelled only, because the grease is fallen into them, and that there is no other outward ulcer, neither will the bathing with cold water and other outward helps assuage it. Then you shall take a piece of strong course woollen cloth, and thereof make him a hose a pretty deal larger than his legs, to reach from the lower part of his pastern, up to the cambrel, or to the knee; and make it close and strait at the pastern, and wide above. Then take a pottle of *wine-lees* (if you can

get them) or else the grounds of *lees* of strong *ale* or *beer*, and set them on the fire, and boil them well; then put to them a pound of clarified *hog's grease*, and when it is melted and stirred well together, take as much *wheat bran* as will thicken it, and bring it to the body of a poultice; with this poultice as hot as the horse can suffer it (only you must not scald) fill the hose or hoses, and then close the hose at the top.

With this hose let the horse stand two days; then the third day open the hose at the top, but stir not the poultice, only take molten *hog's grease*, hot as the horse can suffer it, and with a spoon pour it into the poultice on every side, till it will receive no more; for this will renew the strength of the poultice. Then close up the top of the hose, and so let the horse stand other two days or three. Then you may open the leg and rub it down, and if you find strong occasion, you may apply another new poultice; if not, your cure is wrought.

Now, if besides the swelling of his legs, your horse hath ulcers or chaps, or scratches, pains, mules or the like.

Then you shall first apply the former poultice, in all respects as aforesaid; then after five or six days application, when you take the poultice away, you shall take a quart of old *urine*, and put to it half a handful of *salt*, as much of *allum*, and half an ounce of *white copperas*, and boil it till all be mixed and incorporated together; then with this water very hot, wash the sores once or twice a day, and after a little drying, anoint them with the ointment called *egyptiacum*, and is made of *vinegar* eight ounces, of *honey* twelve ounces, of *verdegrease*

two ounces, of *allum* one ounce and an half; boil it to that height till it come to a red salve, and it will both kill the malignant humors, and also heal and dry up the sores.

~~~~~

COLDS, GLANDERS, SICKNESS, MOLTEN GREASE, LOOSE STOMACH, FAINTING, (HORSE-FAT,—TO MAKE A.)

TAKE of *anniseed*, of *cummin-seeds*, of *fenu-greek-seeds*, of the fine searsed powder of *elecampane* roots, of each two ounces, beaten and searsed to a very fine dust; then add to them two ounces of brown *sugarcandy* beaten to powder, and two ounces of the *flour of brimstone*; then take an ounce of the best juice of *liquorish*, and dissolve it on the fire in half a pint of *white wine*: which done, take an ounce of the best chymical oil of *anniseeds*, and three ounces of the syrup of *colts-foot*; then of *sal-lad oil*, of fine live *honey*, and the purest syrup of *sugar* or *molasses*, of each half a pint; then mix all these with the former powders; and with as much fine *wheat flour* as will bind and knit them all together: work them into a thick paste, and make thereof balls somewhat bigger than French walnuts, hulls and all; and so keep them in a close gally-pot, for they will last all the year: yet I do not mean that you should keep them in the pot in balls, for because they cannot lie close, the air may get in and do hurt, as also the strength of the oils will sweat outward, and weaken the substance; therefore knead the whole lump of paste into the gally-pot, and make the balls as you have occasion to use them.



Now for the use of these balls, because they are cordial, and have divers excellent virtues, you shall understand, that if you use them to prevent sickness, then you shall take one of these balls, and anoint it all over with sweet butter, and so give it to the horse in the morning, in the manner of a pill; then ride him a little after, if you please, otherwise you may chuse, and feed and water him abroad or at home, according to your usual custom; and this do three or four mornings.

If you use them to cure either cold or glanders, then use them in the same manner for a week together.

If you use them to fatten an horse, then give them for a fortnight together.

But if you use them in the nature of scouring, to take away molten grease or foulness, then instantly after his heat and in his heat you must use them.

Again, if you find your horse at any time hath taken a little cold, as you shall perceive by his inward rattling; if you iake one of these balls, and dissolve it in half a pint of *sack*, and so give it the horse with a horn; it is a present remedy.

Also to dissolve the ball in his ordinary water, being made milk-warm, it worketh the like effect, and fatteneth exceedingly.

To give one of these balls before travel, it prevents tiring; to give it in the height of travel, it refresheth weariness; and to give it after travel, it saves an horse from surfeits and inward sickness.



## LAX, OR LOOSENESS.

*For Laxativeness, or extreme Looseness.*

TAKE a quart of *red wine*, and set it on the fire ; then put into it an ounce and an half of *bolearmony* made in fine powder, and two ounces and an half of the *conserves of sloes* ; then stir and mix them well together ; after take it from the fire, and put to it a spoonful or two of the powder of *cinnamon* : and brewing all well together, give it the horse.

Let him fast two hours after it, and let him eat no washed meat.

Hay is wholesome, so is bread and oats, if they be well mixed with beans or wheat, but not otherwise.

~~~~~  
SCOURING.

An excellent Scouring, when other Scourings will not work.

TAKE of sweet *butter* a quarter of a pound, half so much *Castile soap* ; beat them well together, then add to them two spoonfuls of *hemp-seed*, bruised ; of *anniseed* a spoonful, bruised ; of *sugarcandy* an ounce ; of *rosin* finely bruised half a spoonful : work all these into a paste, and give it the horse immediately after his heat, or when you have warmed him, and stir up the grease and foulness within him.

~~~~~  
GREASE AND SCRATCHES.

*For Grease fallen into the Legs, to help them at twice dressing, and to help the Scratches.*

TAKE of *train oil*, of *nerve oil*, of *oil de bay*, of each half a pint, and the bigness of an egg of *allum* ; boil them all together ; then having



cleansed the sores, and opened the poultice, if there be any, with this salve anoint the griefs and it is a speedy cure.

~~~~~  
BLEEDING.

To stop bleeding at the Nose.

THE chief cause thereof is the thinness of the vein in the head; you must let him blood in both the plate-veins, and then wind a thumb-band of wet hay about his neck, and throw cold water upon the thumb-band till you see the blood to staunch; the thumb-band must be so long, that it may be wound from his ears to his breast very lightly.

~~~~~  
FEBULA, OR PESTILENCE.

*For a Febula, or Horse-pestilence.*

TAKE one ounce of *storax*, one ounce of *benjamin*, one ounce of *betony*, a quarter of an ounce of *English saffron*; these being beaten all to a powder, put them into a quart of new ale, and give it to the horse to drink. Let him not have any warm water, but keep him as before from any drink two days, and let him eat grass, if to be had.

~~~~~  
SCOURING.

A gallant Scouring to make a Beast thrive Winter or Summer.

TAKE a handful of *groundsel*, called by some *sertion*, half a handful of *red sage*, half a handful of dried or green *wormwood* stript; you must shred them all small, and boil them in a pint and an half of strong *beer*; and when it comes off the fire, put in a piece of *butter*,

as big as an egg. You may put in as much of the powder of *Mechoacan* as will lie upon a shilling at three or four times. I know it purgeth slime and molten grease in lumps, and works very kindly; give him warm water to drink, evening and morning for three or four days after. A mash of malt once a day, or once in two days, if your horse do not fill well, and that his coat stand right up staring, or be hide-bound, give him this. Proved.



COUGH.

For a Cough of the Lungs.

TO know this, the horse will cough hollowly and gruntingly; he will hang down his head when he coughs; his flanks will beat, he will fetch his breath short. For remedy, let him stand in the night before; the next day in the morning fasting, give him a spoonful of the *syrup of horehound*, and a spoonful of the *flour of brimstone*, and put these into a pint and a half of strong *beer* heated blood warm, and give it to him fasting: take him and ride him three or four miles presently upon it, till he sweat well: ride but a foot pace within a mile of home; be careful to set him up warm: litter and clothe him warm: let him stand in not above two or three nights, if it be in summer; after that turn him out from ten o'clock to three o'clock, for two or three days, and then turn him out for altogether: the more moderate you work him, the better he will thrive. It will take away his cough, clear his pipes, and make him thrive much after it. If there be a white, thick, clayey water near, let him drink there; it is a warmer and more fat-

tening water than any other ; give warm water not above twice. This drink will clear his pipes, and drive it from his lungs. You may put in as much of the powder of *niachoachan*, as will lie upon a shilling at three times.

Proved.



STAR.

To make a Star in an Horse's forehead.

FIRST, with a pair of scissars cut away the hair close to the skin, in such a place as you would have the form of a star to be ; then take a piece of red brick, and rub it hard upon every place, where you have clipt away the hair ; rub it till it be at the roots of the hair, then wipe it clean with a linen rag ; then make a plaister of *Burgundy pitch*, and spread it upon a linen cloth, no longer nor wider than the form of the star itself ; then, a little before you lay it on, lay a hot iron upon the pitch to soften it, that it may stick on the better ; then clap it to the place, as a plaister fit for the star, and lay a hot iron on the back of the plaister to heat it ; then over the first plaister lay another plaister a little broader, heating the second as you did the first, and so let it stick on till it come off of itself, which may be a month ; when these plaisters come off, then to make the hair come white in the place where you would have the star be, take a little honey and butter, more honey than butter, and mix them together, and anoint the star once in three days, and do so for that distance of days four or five times, and in a quarter of a year you shall see the thing desired : he may stand in the house or run abroad : you may work him

or ride him: I know nothing to the contrary but that a man with this course taking, may make a mark in any form, what he pleaseth, and where he pleaseth, about the beast, whether in his buttocks, sides, or any other place, as well as the forehead.

HUNGRY EVIL.

THE hungry evil is an unnatural and over hasty greediness in an horse to devour his meat faster than he can chew it, and is only known by his greedy snatching at his meat as if he would devour it whole. The cure is, to give him to drink milk and wheat meal mixed together, a quart at a time, and to feed him with provender by little and little till he forsake it.

STRANGULLION.

For the Strangullion.

THIS disease is a soreness in the horse's yard, and an hot burning when he pisseth. The signs are, he will piss oft, yet but a drop or two at once. The cure is, to boil in the water he drinketh good store of the herb *hogfen-nel* or *loveage*, and it will cure.

POCKY FARCION.

To cure a Foul, Rank, Pocky Farcion, which runs all over an Horse, or in any partioular part of his Body.

AN horse that hath the farcion, if his breath smell very strong, and stink, then do not meddle with him, for his lights are rotten, and there is no cure for him, for he is as full of them within as without. But if his breath be

sweet, there is no question of the cure. First, for all knotted, budded farcions, separate the sound from the sick, for this disease is infectious; they will take it one of another. This disease cometh first of colds and surfeit; for remedy do as followeth: Give him but a little hay over night to keep his jaws from falling; the next day morning, let him bleed on both sides of the neck, and let him bleed well, then give him this drink: one ounce of *aristolochia*, an ounce of *turmeric*, one ounce of *anniseeds*: beat your turmeric and anniseeds small, and grate the root of *aristolochia*, and put them all together, with one handful or two of *lungwort* or *liverwort*, *rue*, one good handful of *red sage*, a handful of green or dried *wormwood*, one handful of green *fennel*: and if it be winter that you cannot get it green, then instead thereof take two ounces of *fennel seeds*, cut the herbs small, and beat the seeds, and put them all to steep in three pints of running spring water, and let them lie in steep all night. The next day morning before you give it him, ride him a mile till he be warm; at his return give it him cold as it stood all night; then ride him gently a mile after his drink, set him up, warm clothed and littered; let him stand upon the bit seven or eight hours, then unbit him and give him a little sweet hay, and at night warm water, with some wheat bran in it: the next day morning ride to the water, and let him drink, but let him drink but once a day, but ride him well upon his watering, and at the end of three days give him his former drink again, and order him as before. Work him moderately all the time of his cure, be it in winter or in summer. For this disease keep

him in the house with dry meat ; when he is cured, you may turn him out, or keep him in the stable, which you please. When he is cold, wash him twice a day up to the back, soak him well in the water, and at three or four days distance, if you see need require, give him two or three drinks more, ordering him as before. As soon as you have given him the first drink, with the end of your cornet-horn let him blood in the furrow in the top of his mouth. These drinks will make him run at the nose much white or yellow matter, and they will make him vomit much filth. These drinks will much purge and dry up all the gross humors in his body, and cleanse the blood. After these drinks given, you shall see the farcions to appear with red heads, and they will drop out of themselves ; and where you see them ready to drop out, apply this medicine ; take a quarter or half a pound of *rock allum*, and put it into the fire, and you shall see it run and be all of a cake ; then take it out and beat it to powder, and mix as much as you think you shall use with your fasting spittle, till it be like an ointment : and there where you see they are ready to drop out, lay a little of this upon the head of the bud, which is the head of the farcy ; and where you see they are hard in the flesh, let them alone, for some will die, and the rest will drop out of themselves. Ride him up and down in the water twice a day, as far as the swelling goes, a good while after the alum and spittle have taken place. These drinks, with the soak in the water, and the allum and spittle, will make a speedy cure. Proved.

MAD ITCH,--FOR THE.

FIRST bleed in the neck ; then take strong *lie* and *vinegar* and boil it ; then add to it *gun-powder* and *copperas* ; make it very strong, then tie a clout to a stick and wash the horse where the sores are, and it never faileth of a cure ; you may wash with sour *buttermilk* and *soot* of the chimney mixed together. It has cured.

GLANDERS, &c.

Of the running Glanders, or mourning of the Chine.

TAKE of *auripigmentum* two drachms, of *tussilaginis* as much made into powder, then mixing them together with *turpentine* till they be like paste, and making thereof little cakes, dry them before the fire ; then take a chafing-dish of coals, and laying one or two of the cakes thereon, cover them with a funnel, and when the smoak ariseth, put the funnel into the horse's nostrils, and let the smoak go up into his head ; which done, ride him till he sweat ; do this once every morning before he be watered, till the running at his nostrils cease, and the kernels under his chaps be lessened.



STRANGUARY, OR SUPPRESSION OF URINE.

THE symptoms of a suppression of urine ; the subject is almost incessantly endeavoring to stale, with frequent straining and groaning without evacuation ; a few drops or dribbling is only perceptible, and that seems to come away with acute pain. After which he resumes his usual position, but soon returns to the former

attempt of staling without effect. The cure is, to bleed largely without delay, then take *Castile* or *yellow soap*, two ounces, *nitre*, one ounce, *ginger* in powder and *camphire*: divide this into two balls and give one immediately; let it be repeated in two or three hours at farthest, if the first should not prove sufficiently successful. That not the least time may be lost, but relief given to the beast without unnecessary delay, the following *glisters* should be given him by means of a bag and pipe prepared for the purpose, all which might be going on at the same time: Take gruel, of moderate consistence, full three pints, *gum arabiac* and *nitre*, in powder, of each one ounce, *oil of juniper* two drachms, *liquid laudanum*, half an ounce *olive oil*, a quarter of a pint, incorporate these well together, and let it be injected something more than blood warm. That the obstruction or cause of difficulty in the urinary passages may be perfectly removed and restored to a proper tone, it will be advisable to give one ounce of *gum arabiac*, and half an ounce of *nitre*, in the water which the beast drinks, every morning for a week or ten days, for the purpose of sheathing the passages that may have slightly suffered through the severity of the disease in its progression.

~~~~~  
FRET,—FOR THE.

TAKE *ginger*, *carraway*, *coriander seed*, and *alspice*, each one ounce, which bruise in a mortar, and boil it in a pint and an half of strong beer for a few minutes; then strain and add of *brandy* a quarter of a pint, and give it the horse blood warm without delay. This may be repeated in an hour and an half, if the disorder



is not considerably dispelled ; after which give him a *glisten*. Remember that you *rub* the beasts legs well with woollen clothes, to cause perspiration, and to make the blood circulate , and this must be done with unwearied industry to forward the cure.



## STIFLE.

*For a Stifle in the Stifling-bone.*

IF your horse be stifled, that you see the stifling-bone out of its place ; then first swim him in a mill-pool for half an hour, till he sweat behind his ears ; in which time or before, the bone will be in its place again : then lead him gently home clothed, and keep him in the stable warm ; as soon as he comes into the stable, peg him on the contrary foot behind, all the time of his cure whilst he stands still in the house ; and as soon as he is dry, take *soap* and *brandy* and lay it hot to the grieved place, and heat it well in with a hot iron. It will swell a little at first, but it will soon fall. It will strengthen the grieved place much, and in a short time it will be a perfect cure. Or thus, you may for a stifle after swimming, peg him as soon as he comes into the stable, and then always when he stands in the house ; and when he is dry, rub in half an ounce of the *oil of turpentine*, and as much strong *beer*, shaken together in a glass. It will cause it to swell something more than soap and brandy, but it is admirable for a stifle, and a speedy cure. Observe, that swimming is not good for any strain, but only to bring a stifle-bone right into the place again ; and you may try it for



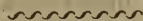
that, but not for a strain. The beast must stand in his house all the time of his cure.



## MANGE.

*For a Horse that is Mangy.*

TAKE a gallon of strong *ale*, and a pound of *tobacco stalks*, half a pound of *allum*, a pint of *salt*, one penny-worth of *mercury*; boil these all together until they be half boiled away; the day before, let the horse blood, and curry him with a comb; when the horse is dressed, wash the manger with scalding water, and smoke the saddle with *allum* or *brimstone*, burnt hay or straw. Proved.



## WIND.

*Glister to expel Wind.*

TAKE *fennel seeds* and *anniseed*, two spoonfuls of each, and bruise them; a little *camomile flowers*, *rosemary flowers*, *pellitory of the wall*, *penny-royal* and *camomile*, of each of these half a handful.



## STRANGLING AND COUGH.

*For a Strangling in the Guts, the Cough of the Lungs, clearing the Pipes, and giving much Breath.*

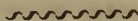
IF you be to run your horse for a wager, give him two of these balls a week before. I make them thus: take as much of fresh or salt *butter* as the bigness of an egg and an half, part it in the midst as near as you can, hollow it in the fashion of a pie, mix and bray together with your butter half an ounce of *anniseeds*,



beaten to powder, then make a pie of your butter and anniseeds thus mixed, and put into it three quarters of a spoonful of syrup of *horehound* into each ball, and close up the ball close that the syrup may not come out. Make your balls no bigger than a barber's wash-ball, or but a little bigger; for it is not good to give balls too big: then warm a pint and an half of strong *beer* blood warm, and fill the horn with *beer*, and before you put it in, put in one of the balls, having pulled out his tongue with your left hand before. When his tongue is out, put the balls into his mouth as far as you can, then give two hornfuls of *beer* to, wash it down; do the like with the next ball as you did with the first; then take his back and ride him for three or four miles a hand-gallop, till he sweat well; for this reason, because the disease, in this receipt, as they come with a heat, so the speediest and best remedy is to drive them away with a heat. The second reason is, that a drink will take no more place in a horse for heats and colds, than to give a horse a drink, and walk him about the yard. Therefore for diseases of this nature, ride him till he sweat soundly: a mile before you come at home, ride him but a foot pace, that he may be set up something cool; then tie him up to the rack, cover him with two cloths, stuff him and litter him very warm, cover his head and body to keep him from the cold; let him stand four or five hours before he eat or drink; then when you unbit him, give him a mash, or some water blood warm, or some clean hay, and take off one cloth, and keep him warm. If this will not do, a week after give him the same again; and give him warm water but two days



after it, and then cold water, a week before your horse goes to grass, give it three or four times a year, and it will keep your horse in gallant health. It will fatten a horse. It will make him sick; but fear nothing. If you give your horse too much at a time, that it makes him extraordinary sick, give him a pint of milk as it comes from the cow, or heat the milk blood warm. Proved.



### SINEW-STRAIN.

*For a new Sinew-strain.*

APPLY soap and brandy once hot, and heat them in with a hot iron; but first you must clip the hair away in the pastern right over the shackle-veins, and then apply the charge. Letting blood will much further the cure. Let the sinew-strain be before or behind. You must let blood if you will have a speedy cure. Letting blood thus, and applying the charge, will take away his lameness in forty-eight hours, with once doing at the most. Do not ride him in four or five days after you have laid on this charge. This soap and brandy, heated well in with a hot iron, will not come off in fourteen or fifteen days; and when you see the scurf to rise, anoint it with *trotters oil*, which is made of sheeps feet boiled. Anoint it once in two days, to strengthen the sinews, till he go well; you may ride him in four or five days, or a week. Keep him out of the water, after you have applied the charge, and it will be a perfect cure. Proved.



## CANKER.

*For a Canker in the Mouth.*

YOU shall know it by these signs ; he will slaver at the mouth, and the roots of his tongue will be eaten with the canker, the sides of his mouth will be hot, raw and yellow. If the canker have eaten any holes in his mouth, and caused many sores, then take a pottle of running *spring water*, an handful of *red sage*, a dozen sprigs *rosemary*, an handful unset *hyssop*. If this disease happen in summer, then add five or six *walnut leaves*, and a quarter of a pound of *roch allum* ; put all these into a kettle, and let them boil till they be half consumed, then put all into an earthen pan, and let it stand till it be cold. You need not take out the herbs, but when you use it, take ten or twelve spoonfuls of this liquor, then put out his tongue with one hand, and have in readiness a linen cloth tied at a stick's end ; dip it into the liquor and wash his mouth and throat all over ; then pull out his tongue again, and throw a handful of salt into his mouth ; then presently after dip another stick's end tied with a rag into *tar*, and put it all over his mouth where the sores are ; and once in three days give him a *cordial*, and *white wine* and *honey*, made as you see before, and the same quantity. Ride or work him upon it. This *water*, *salt*, *tar*, *white wine* and *honey*, and *cordials*, will bring the horse to a stomach, cleanse his stomach, and loosen his body. It will take away the heat of his stomach, and comfort it. It will cut the tough phlegm there. It will cure the canker in a very short time, except his tongue and mouth be very much eaten indeed. You



need not wash his mouth afterwards with the water and tar, for the wine and honey, and the cordials will cure it alone, and work the aforesaid effects. Let the hay and provender you give him be clean and moist: it will be the better. Give him no chaff, for that will stick in his mouth and fester it. Proved.



### STRAIN.

*For a Strain in the Coffin-joint, or a Sive-bone in the Socket of the Hoof.*

TAKE off the shoe, and then pare the bottom of the foot as thin as you can, till the blood do almost appear. You shall know in what place the strain is in, by taking the foot in your hand, and wrying it to you and from you. If it be there, he will shrink at it much when you thus turn his foot. When you find where it is, make this poultice and lay it on hot: Take a pint of powdered *beef* or *pork* brine, and a quarter of a pound of kitchen stuff grease; put them into a skillet and boil them together half an hour; then take some *wheat bran* and put to it; make a poultice thereof, not too thick nor too thin; then set on the shoe again, and put a quantity of this poultice as hot as you can into the sole of the foot; then stuff the sole with *tow* or *hards*, and either splinter it in with a flat stick, or with a piece of *sole leather*, to keep it in, and let it lie on forty-eight hours; then take a long linen cloth, and spread the rest of the poultice scalding hot all about the top of the hoof, the pastern, and up the leg so far as the swelling goes, and let it lie on forty-eight hours; at the end of which take it off, and lay on ano-



ther, and let it lie on as long, and so likewise a third or fourth, till you see him go sound, which will be in a very few days, and after a week's time he will not complain of it. If you have occasion to ride him, after the third dressing you may ride him eight or ten miles moderately. A little before you set him up wash his legs, and when they are dry, take off his shoe, and lay the poultice to as before.

Proved.



### PURGE.

*A Purge for filthy Slime, and to carry away the peccant Humors which Surfeits have engendered.*

TAKE a pint of *white wine*, or a quart of new *ale*, which you can best get, as much of the best powder of *mechoacan* as you can take up with a shilling at four times; put them together, and give it blood warm; ride him gently a mile or two. and set him up warm, and let him stand upod the bit five or six hours; then give him a warm mash, and half an hour after give him *oats* and *bran* mingled together a little at a time; wet his hay that night. This will make the slime to come away in great flakes upon the dung. If after this his stomach fail, then give him *whits wine*, *honey*, and *cordial*.

Proved.




### SWIFT-CUT.

*An approved Cure for the Swift-cut, or any hewing of the Legs whatsoever.*

TAKE a pint of *white wine*, and put to it two or three spoonfuls of *honey*, and stir them well.



together ; then boil them till they be well incorporated together, and brought to the body of an ointment: then take it from the fire, and put in as much *turpentine* as there was *honey* before, and stir all together. Then strain it with this salve somewhat hot; bathe the sores twice a day, and it is a most speedy healer.



### SURFEITS BY COLD.

*For an Horse that is Sick and Surfeited by Colds, whether in Winter or in Summer.*

FIRST let him blood, then give him this purge afterwards: take of *aloes succatrina* two ounces made into fine powder; then make it up into pills with fresh or sweet *butter*, and give it the horse over night, he having been kept fasting the whole day before, and instead of hay, straw, or any other meats hard of digestion, two or three days before you give him this purge, or any other purge, let his meat be either wheat or rye bran; or you may give him bread made on purpose with beans, pease and some rye in it, or else oats well sifted and dry and sweet, and let his drink be *white water* only, which is nothing else than wheat bran sodden in water; the next day in the morning early, after he hath taken the pills, give him either a sweet mash, or for want thereof white water, for that will make his pills to work the more kindly that day; then let him fast till night, during which time he will purge freely; then at night give him *white water*, after *oats* and *bran*, and give him for all night hay sprinkled with water. If he be strong bodied, it may be he will not purge the first day, but the second day he surely will; in the mean time



give him mashes, *white bran* boiled, and *white water*, or clean *oats*, and after his purging keep him warm and well littered ; keep him to *white water* for two or three days after, or longer, and when you give him cold water, let it not be with excess. This is an excellent purge.  
 Praved.



### FALLING OF THE CREST, &c.

*For the falling of the Crest, Manginess in the Mane, or Shedding of the Hair.*

ALL these diseases proceed from poverty, mislike, or over-riding ; and the best cure for the falling of the crest is blood-letting, or good keeping, with good store of meat : for strength and fatness will ever raise the chest. But if the mane be mangy, you shall anoint it with *butter* and *brimstone* ; and if the hair fall away, then take *southern wood* and burn it to ashes : then take the ashes, and mix them with common *oil* ; anoint the place therewith, and it will bring the hair presently, both smooth, thick, and fair.



### BONES BROKEN OR OUT OF JOINT.

IF you have placed the bones in the true place, take the root of *osmond* and beat it in a mortar with the *oil of swallows*, and anoint all the member therewith ; then splent it, and roll it up, and in fifteen days the bones will knit and be strong.



## MOLTEN GREASE.

*For a sudden great Heat, as in Hunting, Racing, or hard Riding, that the Horse's Grease is melted.*

THIS you shall know by the panting of the horse that night he comes in so hot; for if he be over-ridden and his grease melted, you shall know it by the panting at the breast and girthing place, and heaving at the flank: you shall see the night he comes in, and the next day morning, that his body will be mighty hot. For remedy, take and give this, to purge him and cleanse him, and to qualify the heat and working of his body: Take one pint of *sack*, and put to it one ounce of *diascordium*, beaten small—mix them together, and give it to the beast at any time cold, but in the morning fasting, is the best; give him warm water for three or four days after: give him bursted *oats*, boiled *barley*, and mashes made of ground *malt*, keep him well littered, and clothed warm. If he forsake his meat, and you see he hath lost his stomach, to bring him to his stomach again give him two ounces of *honey*, and half a pint of *white wine* mixed together, and heated blood warm. In the morning after he hath drunk cold water, you may give it him with a horn: it will make him piss, clear his bladder, and bring him to his stomach again. After you have given him it, ride him a mile or two gently, and set him up warm; at night ride him a mile or two again, and litter him well, and keep him warm. Thus do for three or four days, or a week; at three days end, give him the wine and honey as you were before directed. If you see notwithstanding all these



means used, that he will not fall to his meat, and that he is bound in his belly, and dungs very small; then give him this cordial two or three times, two or three days betwixt each cordial giving. Take three pints of stale *beer*, household brown *bread*, the quantity of half a penny loaf; boil these two well together, then take it off the fire, and put into it a quarter of a pound of *honey*, and a quarter of a pound of fresh *butter*: give him this cordial blood-warm fasting, and ride him a mile or two every evening and morning, as well when you do not give it to him, as when you do; ride him fairly, and clothe and litter him up warm: this cordial will bring him to his stomach, and cause him to be loose bodied, and dung soft, although he be weak, and have little or no stomach. Four or five hours after his cordial, the first thing you give him, boil him half a peck of *oats*, and a pound of *fennugreek* together in water till they be burst, and the water wherein these were boiled, pour it from the *oats* into another pail, and put some cold water to it, and when he drinks let him drink of this water; for the *oats* and *fennugreek*, throw some of them into the manger hot, and if he be loth to eat them, then strew some *wheat bran* upon it, and it is very likely he will eat all together. This course taken in every particular, will bring your horse to a stomach, and raise him suddenly. A fortnight or three weeks after he is thus melted, and that you have given him the former things, to give him this purge of *aloes*, will do the beast a great deal of good in this case: I am confident it is good. Or give him as much of the powder of *mechoacan*, as will lie upon a shilling at three



or four times; that is very good in a pint of *wyne*, or a quart of strong *ale*. Proved.

~~~~~  
 GRIPES.

For the Gripes.

AFTER the first attack there is very rarely any cessation of symptoms, on the contrary they almost invariably increase, in proportion to the time they have continued without counteraction. The subject is in such extreme agony, that he becomes insensible to every degree of danger, and totally disobedient even to those he is most accustomed to; he is alternately up and down, rolling over from one side to the other, beating his head and legs against the ground, stall, or wall, and continues in such state of extravagant distortion as seems nearly allied to madness or convulsions. The wild fulness of his eyes, the pricking of his ears, the heaving of his flank, the involuntary groanings and strainings to dung and stale without effect, (in addition to the profuse sweat that the excruciating pain occasions,) are a collection of symptoms sufficient to demonstrate the species of disease without a probability of being deceived.

Let two or three incisions with the phlebotomy be made in the fourth and fifth bars of the mouth, so as to occasion a plentiful bleeding, which will not only contribute to a reduction of the general stricture, but in its effect upon the internal passages constitute a prelude to the relaxation that is to ensue.

This case is one of those where the probable extrication from impending danger depends entirely upon the expeditious mode of commu-

nicating alleviation: to take off the painful spasms from the intestines, by an immediate solution of their contents is the instantaneous object of consideration. This point must, if possible, be carried by an accumulation of the most energetic efforts, without waiting hour after hour for the effect of any single administration. To promote this by every possible means, let the following laxative glisten be prepared, and thrown into the rectum without delay: Thin *gruel*, two quarts; common *salt*, four ounces; *tincture of jalap*, and of *senna*, each one ounce; *olive oil*, a quarter of a pint; mix and give of a moderate warmth.

During this operation let there be going on in preparation the following purgative drink, which may also be given with a horn, so soon as the various circumstances and concurring difficulties will permit: Boil *senna leaves*, one ounce and a half; *race ginger* and *carraway seeds* bruised, each half an ounce with *cream of tartar*, one ounce, in a pint of water for a few minutes, in which dissolve *glauber salts*, six ounces, then strain and add *tincture of jalap*, one ounce.

To give the greater and more expeditious effect to these endeavors, as well as to keep the horse standing, four persons (two on each side) should be employed in severe and incessant friction, on the back, sides, flank, under the belly, and between the fore legs, to keep him in such motion as may forward the wished-for evacuations, as well as to keep him from falling to the ground, or laying down, when a scene of distress instantly ensues. He may also be trotted occasionally in hand, an attendant following brisk with a whip to keep him in action,

a work of some care and trouble, for if not strictly attended to he cannot be kept upon his legs.

A mash made of *oats* and *bran*, an equal quantity of each, and tolerable thin, and well boiled, and given him to eat in such a warmth as the state or severity of the case may justify, will be very proper, after the medicines have all done operating.



STUB IN THE FOOT, &c.

For a Stub in the Foot or Heel, an overreach with the Toe of the after-foot, upon the Heel of the fore-foot, a Tread or Cut above the Hair, or when a Stone hath cut a Horse's Leg.

FIRST wash the wound with fair *water*, or with *water* and *salt*; when the wound is dry, take a big *onion*, or two or three small ones will answer the end as well, a spoonful of *pepper* beaten small, as much *crown soap* as the bigness of an egg; these three things must be beaten to a salve, and laid upon a linen cloth, and laid to the wound twenty-four hours, and at the end of that time dress it as you did before; and so continue doing every twenty-four hours till it be whole. If this quantity of medicine be too little, make more. As you see it heal, dress it but once in two or three days. This onion salve will prevent a quitter-bone, if you lay it to before it break. This salve is good to heal and cure all these hurts.

Proved.

HORSE PRICKED.

For a Horse that is Pricked in the Shoeing, and afterwards Festered.

FIRST open it well, and take out all the corruption to the very bottom, so far as the nail did go; then take three or four *house-snails*, a little *salt*, as much *soap* as a walnut; beat them all together, and lay it to the place that was pricked twenty-four hours, till you see it begin to heal; then dress it but once in two days; and in three or four dressings it will be whole. When you lay this medicine to the bottom of the foot, lay some *flax*, *hards*, or *tow*, over it, and over that a piece of *leather*, or *splinters* to keep the hards and medicine in. And if it break out, or be soft at the top of the hoof, lay some of this medicine to, and bind it on with a linen rag. Proved.

~~~~~  
HEAD-ACHE.

*For the Head-ache.*

PRICK in the mouth, between the second and third bar, with the end of your cornet-horn, or with a pen-knife; let him bleed well, and let him stand twelve hours; then pour into his nostrils *wine* or *vinegar*, having before some *frankincense*; let his diet be moist and cooling, and he will soon recover. If it be in the winter keep him warm. Proved.

~~~~~  
SWELLING IN THE HEAD.

For a Swelling in any part of the Head.

TAKE some of his own *dung*, as soon as he maketh it; clap it on hot, and bind it fast, and it will take it down. If it require, renew it twice a day.

SURFEIT.

For a moist, hot, running Surfeit, that falls out of his Body into his Fore-legs, and sometimes into his After-legs, and sometimes into all four.

THIS surfeit comes with colds and heats, which are divers ways taken ; when it falls out of his body into his legs, and runs hot, moist, white, yellow, thin, thick, stinking water or matter ; in this case the horse's breath will stink and smell very strong, and his legs will swell and stink extremely ; when this surfeit breaks in his body and falls down into his legs, at his first going out the stable, he will hardly draw his legs over the threshold, and he will be so stiff that he can hardly stir in the stable, but will hold up his legs to his midribs. Although this disease be ever so violent in breaking out, or causing his legs to swell and run, yet you need not fear remedy for him, if you observe these directions following. First, keep him fasting all the night before, or give him but a very little meat, to keep his jaws from falling ; the next day, in the morning before he drink, let him bleed on both the neck-veins, and let him bleed well : then uncord him, and give him this drink following, which will much purge and dry up the gross humors in his body, and cleanse his blood : Take one ounce of *aristolochia*, one ounce of *turmeric*, one ounce of *anniseeds* dry, and beat the turmeric and anniseeds small, and grate the root of *aristolochia* ; put all these together, with one handful of *ruë*, and a handful of *wormwood* green or dry, and one handful of *red sage*, one handful of green *fennel*. If it be winter, that you cannot get green, then take two ounces of *fennel-seeds*,

and beat them small, and put to the rest of the things, and put all into an earthen pot or pan, and put to them three pints of running or spring *water*, and there let them lie in steep all night: the next morning before you give it to him, ride him a mile till he be a little warm, and give it to him cold as it stood all night; then after that ride him a mile again, and let him stand upon the bit six or seven hours, and then give him a little hay, and after that warm water and bran; the next morning ride him to the river, let him drink but once a day, and ride him two or three miles after it: at three days end give him the former drink fasting, and follow the directions before named in this receipt, and so continue doing, by giving the former drink at every three days end, till you see you have dried up the gross humors in his body, and caused them to cease running and swelling; you may work him three or four hours in a day to get him a stomach: let it be in winter or summer, keep him in the house with dry meat. When he is cured you may turn him out. Wash his legs in some water up to the hams, and keep them as cool as you can all the time of the cure. One or two of these drinks given at three days distance, will dry up the humors in his body, which feed the swellings in his legs, cods, or elsewhere; these drinks will make him run at the nose white or yellow. If he fall from his meat, you may the third day after his drink give him a cordial, and then a drink, and then a cordial of *white wine* and *honey*. Now, if there be great chaps or crannies in his legs, as it is an hundred to one but there will, by reason of the extreme heat and continual running of the moist fret-

ting motion, to heal them up, although ever so big, yea, though the sinews were almost rotted with the filth ; to prevent which, and to heal it also, take this excellent receipt following, which is for pains and scratches, and if it were ever so ill, in a short time it will heal it. The way to order the horse and make the salve is thus : in this case you must not ride him into the water, or water at all, but you must first take two or three pails of fair water and wash his legs clean, then clip away all the hair close to the skin, so far as his legs are crannied or scabby ; then wash his legs clean with another pail of fair water, and let him stand till his legs be dry ; then take half a pound of *honey*, an ounce of beaten *pepper*, and ten heads of *garlick* ; beat them well all together in a bowl till they come to a salve ; divide this salve into two parts, spread the one half upon half a sheet of grey paper, and the other half upon the other half sheet of paper ; then take a broad piece of linen cloth and lay it upon the paper, and so lay the plaister to the crannied place, and the cloth over it, and sew it on fast, that it may not come off. Let this plaister lie on two days. Make a small thumb-band of hay, and wind it about his legs and over the plaister for two days ; at the end of which take all off, and take a linen cloth and wipe the chaps of every cranny in his legs or heels clean, and then lay on a fresh plaister, and do as you did before. In three or four times dressing it thus, it will be whole. He must not come into the water all the time of his cure. If you have an horse whose sinews are rotten, broken or cut, or much putrified, then apply none but this medicine to it, and it will draw, cleanse,

and knit them together again. It is for a si-
new in this nature, the best cure in the world.
After you have thus drenched him inwardly,
and cured the swelling of his legs outwardly,
if you see he looks gaunt, and hath no stomach
to his meat, and do not fill and thrive well, if
he be sick and weakly, give him *white wine*
and *honey*, to bring him to his stomach again,
then and not before give the purge of *aloes*.
But if your horse be gaunt, and girt up in his
body, if he be in any heart, and will eat his
meat, in this case give the purge first, and then
your *white wine* and *honey*, and your *cordials*,
as you are directed, to bring him to his stomach.
If you do as you are here directed, all along
throughout the whole receipt in every particu-
lar, you need not question but, through God's
blessing, you shall have the desired success
you look for. Proved.



COLD.

For an old Cold.

IF you see cause, take blood from the neck-
vein, otherwise not; then instead of giving
him *oats*, give him *wheat bran* boiled in water
after this manner, viz. set a kettle over the
fire almost full of water, and when it begins to
boil, put in your *bran*, and let it boil a quarter
of an hour: then take it off, and let it stand
till it be almost cold, and about four or five of
the clock in the morning, give it him as hot as
he can eat it, and for his drink give him the
same water, and at night give him *oats* and
white water to drink, and let him be covered
and littered up warm. - If it be in summer, let
not the stable be too hot, for that will take

away his stomach, and make him faint. And when you give him this water at night, always give him as much of this powder as an egg-shell will hold amongst his *oats*, to which you must keep him eight days together, or longer if you shall see cause ; the boiled bran is that which drieth up all his corrupt and gross humors, which was the cause of his cold. Now, the powder is this, viz. Take of *cummin-seeds* *fenugreek*, *silerus montani*, otherwise called *silsilers*, *nutmegs*, *cloves*, *ginger*, *linseed*, of each of these two ounces, *quick-brimstone* six ounces, make all these into fine powder, and mix them all well together ; it must be given him in his *oats* the quantity that was prescribed before ; but he must first be watered with *white water* ; and then presently let him be well rubbed all over, and clothed and littered warm : and an hour before you give him his *oats*, put into his rack a little sweet *wheat straw*, and let him eat thereof an hour or better, and then, and not before, give him his *oats* mixed with powder ; which having eaten, give him hay at your pleasure, and with doing thus his cold will be gone in a short time, and still sooner, if you air him an hour before sun-set, and an hour after sun-rising, if the sun shine, mark that ; keep up his stomach with *white wine* and *honey*, and the *cordials*, and with what else you think best of.

Froved.

Now, if this cold bring with it a violent cough, as often seen, then use this receipt following.

For a Cold with a violent Cough.

FIRST, give him the *wheat bran* boiled, together with the powder with his *oats*, as is di-

rected in the foregoing receipt, but not above three or four days, or till you see he hath purged sufficiently, for that the said powder dispersed the corrupt and gross humors that are in his body, which do occasion the cough ; and when you perceive that he hath purged sufficiently, keep him notwithstanding to his *white water*, which is no other thing than water made hot in a kettle, and then put in some *wheat bran* or *barley meal* ; let him eat the bran as hot as he will, and drink the water a little warm. But always an hour before you water him, take a stick a little bigger than your thumb of very nigh a foot long, and wrap a linen cloth about it four or five times, first dipped in *oil of bays*, and put into his mouth ; and with some leather thong or piece of small cord, fasten it to either end of the stick, and so fasten it over his ears like the head-stall of a bridle, like as smith's do when they burn a horse for a lamprus. Let him drink with this stick thus in his mouth, and so stand with it an hour after at the least, that he may lick and suck up the said oil ; and after three or four days are expired, and that you see he hath purged sufficiently, which is a little before mentioned ; then when you give him the *oats*, give him amongst them this other powder following, viz. *Fennel-seeds* four ounces, *fenugreek* two ounces, and *cardamum* one ounce ; beat them but a little, or else he will blow them away when he eats his oats. Put one spoonful into his oats, and keep him warm, and use him as is prescribed in the foregoing receipt, and you will find it to do him much good. Proved.

STRAIN. ~

A speedy Cure for a Sinew-strain old or new.

FIRST, let blood in the shackle-veins, which are in the pastern, for it will much further the cure ; then take the fattest cat you can get, kill her, and flea her as soon as you possibly can ; then bruise the flesh and bones of the cat small, and lay it upon a cloth, and bind it close to the sinew-strain, from the pastern up the legs, as far as it will go, and as warm as you can. You must take out her guts before you bruise her flesh, or lay it to : and you must after you have let blood in the shackle-vein, bathe the sinew-strain with *aqua vitæ*, and rub it in cold with your hand, and then afterwards lay the flesh of the cat on a cloth to the place. Of all cures for a sinew-strain this is the best and speediest ; roll a cloth two or three times about the leg, when you have laid the cat on, to bind it on, because a cat draws and knits mightily. Let him not come into the water till he be cured.

Proved.

STALE.

To make a Horse Stale free, and constantly.

TAKE half a pint of *white wine*, one ounce of *ivy berries* beaten to powder, and put to the white wine ; let it lie in steep all night, then give it to the horse next morning fasting. Do not heat it all, but ride him after it a mile or two, then tie him up to the rack, two, three or four hours after it. This is very good for the wind cholic, and to make a horse piss freely ; do this every morning till you see him piss free ; this will cleanse the kidneys of all sand

and filth; it is very good for the stone and gravel. These berries you must gather when they are black ripe, which is about Lent or Shrove-tide. If you gather them green, or when they are full ripe, put them in a platter, and dry them in the sun till they be fit to beat to powder, and give them as you were directed. It is as good for a man as for a horse. *Nettle-seeds* is a great provoker of urine. You may put a handful to the berries and wine.



COLD.

For an old Cold which causeth the Horse to run sometimes at one Nostril, and sometimes at both, and hath done for a year together, and is knotted with Kernels under his Throat between his Jaws.

THE cure is thus: Take an ounce of *turmeric*, an ounce of *anniseeds*, beat them small, one ounce of *lignum vitæ*, you shall have it at the apothecary's, a quarter of a pint of *aqua vitæ*, a quarter of a pint of *white wine* vinegar, one handful of unset *leeks* beaten small in a mortar, wash the mortar with beer; put all these together with a pint and a half of strong *beer*; give them to the beast fasting blood-warm, and litter and clothe him up warm; at the end of that time give him a little sweet *hay*, and at night give him some warm *water* and *bran*; the next morning give him warm *water* and *bran* again, and presently after give him two ounces of *honey*, and half a pint of *white wine* blood warm: then ride him three or four miles after it, clothe and litter him warm when he comes in; whilst he is abroad, boil him half

a peck of *oats* with two ounces of *fenugreek*, and two ounces of *coriander-seeds*, burst them all together, and give it him: the third day morning, give him a cordial made of three pints of stale *beer*, a quarter of a pint of *honey*, as much *butter*, a good piece of *household bread*: put in the honey and butter after the bread and beer is boiled together, and give him this cordial fasting blood-warm; the fourth day morning, give him this drink, viz. one ounce of *polypodium*, one ounce of *Bay berries*, an ounce of long *pepper*, one ounce of brown *sugar-candy*; beat them all small, and put them into a quart of mild strong *beer*, heat it blood-warm, and before you give it him, ride him a mile, and then give it him, and ride him two or three miles after it; clothe and litter him up warm. After he hath fasted for four or five hours, give him bursten *oats*, with two ounces of *fennugreek*, and two ounces of *coriander*, as before; if you have no *coriander*, then take two ounces of *carraway-seeds*, and give him that night of the *oats* and seeds, and put the water where the *oats* and seeds were boiled, into some cold water, and let him drink that and no other. When you have rested him a week, then give him the first drink mentioned in this receipt, and follow him as you are directed every day; in the third week give him the same things again, in the same manner, and at the same distance of days, in all points, as you did the first week, and in three or four weeks it will be a cure. The first drink doth loosen the filth, and open the lights, and set them a running. The cordial, white wine and honey, will keep him to his stomach, help him to void filth at the nose and mouth, and will

much nourish him within ; they do cleanse the stomach, breast and bowels, and do much waste the squinsy in the throat ; they do cut the tough thick phlegm. If you order these things as you are in many places directed, and air him moderately once or twice a day, the horse will soon be sound again. The last drink of *poly-podium*, *long pepper*, *Bay-berries*, is a purger of the veins, blood and liver, and will stay the wasting of the body. That day morning you give him the first drink, apply the charge of *soap* and *brandy*, made in a salve, to the kernels between his jaws, and in a week's time it will be fallen flat, and not break. Lay the charge on scalding hot, and heat it well in. If you see the yellow matter to become white, there will be the greater hopes of the speediness of the cure. Proved.



FARCION.

For a Farcion that lies all over the Body of a Horse.

FIRST, bleed those buds that do not die, wash them with the water you have for any old ulcer, and this will cure them and kill them. Wash them once a day, then take a pottle of running water, and boil it in two spoonfuls of *hemp-seed* beaten to powder, and two handfuls of *rue* cut small ; boil all these together, till it come to a pint and an half, and give it the horse fasting ; do this once in three days, or three times in nine days, let him stand in the night before, and not drink ; you may give him three or four hours after it a mash, or warm water, then hay. This very drink given to a cow or bullock, after letting blood in the

neck, will make them thrive exceeding fast, if it be given them at the spring of the year, and then turned out to grass. If a cow or bullock do not thrive, but is lean, scurvy, hide-bound, and her hair stand right up, do but let blood, and give her this drink, and she will mend presently upon it. Proved.

~~~~~  
FARCION.

*For a Farcion only in the Neck or Head of a Horse.*

FIRST let blood in the neck-veins, then take two spoonfuls of the juice of *hemlock*, and two spoonfuls of the juice of *houseleek*, and mix them together, and put the one half into one ear, and the other half into the other ear; you must mix two spoonfuls of *sallad oil* with the *houseleek* and *hemlock*, and put them all together into his ears. Put a little wool, flax or tow after it, stitch up his ears, and at the end of twenty-four hours, unstitch them and take out the stuffing; give him a mash two or three hours after, and warm water to drink. You may give him any meat to eat, only wash the buds with the water for an old ulcer, till he be whole. Proved.

~~~~~  
OF ROWELS.

THERE is a wrong-judged custom amongst our professors, concerning rowels. If a horse is sick, they bleed him, right or wrong, give him a drench and put a rowel under his belly; without enquiring of his master or keeper, what usage he hath lately had which might occasion the illness. Rowels are absolutely necessary in some cases, but are absolutely un-

necessary in others, and serve only to disfigure and torment a horse. As for example,

The rowel in the navel for the grease (which you may see in almost all the coach and cart horses about town) is very wrong, because rowels in a horse that is greased, promote too great a discharge from the blood and animal spirits, which weaken him to a degree of irrecoverable poverty. I have put five rowels in a horse at one time, thinking thus to let the grease run off; but the more the rowels ran, the more he ran at the heels; till the texture of his blood was so broken, that I could not recover him.



WOUND.

An infallible Method of curing any Wound whatever, by

THREE HAZEL STICKS.

IF your horse, or any beast, should be wounded in any part whatever, the cure is thus: Take three *hazel* sticks of the last seasons growth, each one a foot long, made smooth at the ends—with each one of which search and probe the wound to the bottom, and then again, beginning with the one first used, and thus go thro' three several courses of probing in all. Remember to lay each one, in their courses of operation, after probing, on clean paper. Having thus done, lay the sticks beside each other on the paper, with the bloody ends together; then spread *tar* on so much of the paper, and of them as are bloody, and lap them thus up in the paper; after which, if it is winter, place it in the coolest part of a stove-room, but if summer, in any place you please out of the damp or sun, with that part which has been used, towards the east. Proved infallible.

PISSING,—RED.

For a Horse or Cow that maketh Red Water.

TAKE three or four *onions*, one pound of lean *beef*, roasted on the coals till you may beat it to powder, *bole-armoniac* as much as the bigness of an egg, one handful of *grey salt*: chop and beat them all together, and put them all into a quart of strong *beer*: take *ale*, if you can get it, and give it to the beast, and presently after it, give her a dishful of *cheese-runnets* of almost a pint; do but this once or twice fasting, and let the beast fast two or three hours after it, and it will cure. Proved.



SINEW-STRAIN.

A SINEW-STRAIN is always upon the sinews which grow behind on the fore leg, and behind upon the sinews of the after leg, above the fetlock joint, upon the back part of the fore leg, and upon the back part of the after leg, much about the ankle-bone; it will be swelled and knotted when it is thus overstrained: you may see and discern it by his going, and by the swelling, if you nip it between your fingers and thumb, he will quinch at it very much. For the cure: take *nerve-oil* and *turpentine*, of each a penny-worth, and mix them together, and lay it on at two several times, or more, till it be well; and always dry it in well with a hot bar of iron when you lay it on, and anoint it two or three days distance; you must rest him in the time of the cure.



GARGET.

For a Cow that hath a Garget in her Dug or Udder.

YOU shall know when she hath the garget in

her dug, for then she will not give down her milk : For remedy, let her stand in some house or yard the night before you let blood ; the next day in the morning fasting, let her blood on both sides of the neck, then give her this drink —take a handful of *higtaper*, by some called *mullin*, and cut it small ; it groweth by the sides of dikes, and in highways ; it hath a long stem with a broad woolly leaf ; and afterwards boil it a little in a pint of *beer*, and give it her blood warm fasting. This, with once giving, will make her let down her milk freely.

Proved.



COWS,—ORDERING OF.

Observations concerning the Ordering of Cattle, as Cows, &c. in the time of feeding, when there is great fulness of Grass, as in the Months of May, June and July.

IN those months must be your care to let them blood ; for at that time of the year they never digest their meat so well as in winter : and those raw digestions do hinder many inward passages, which causeth bad blood. Which to help, you must let them blood in the month of May, and let them stand in some close yard the night before. And the night after, give them a handful of *hemp-seed* a piece. Now, for the *pestilence*, *gargil* and *murrain*, they are infectious, contagious diseases, none like them ; they proceed many times from hard driving, heats and colds, hunger, or any other thing breeding corrupt humours, as by drinking when they are hot, or feeding upon grass, foul and corrupted foods, as in low grounds after floods, when the grass is unpurged. and the like. And sometimes it cometh from some evil influences

of the planets, corrupting the plants and fruits of the earth. And sometimes from cattle too, and from divers such like causes. But, however, when these diseases begin, certain it is that they are most infectious, and if there be not great care taken, they will leave but few alive of a great many, for the one infects the other. These diseases are easily known, they will hang down their heads, and run water at the eyes, will swell on the lips, and all on one side of the cheek, and under the tongue, and sometimes at the roots of the ears. The cure is, to separate the sound from the sick, a good distance from the air where the sick breathe, then let them bleed on the neck-veins, and give every one a spoonful of *diapente*; take a spoonful of *treacle-jeau*, and give it in a pint of *verjuice*: thus give them a good quantity of old urine, and a handful of new *hen's-dung*; stir the urine and *hen's-dung* well together, and give it to the beast blood-warm; keep him in the house a week after. These, for cows or bullocks, are prime receipts. Proved.



LICE.

To kill Lice in Horses and Cows.

TAKE two penny-worth of *quick-silver*, and work it well with fasting spittle upon the palm of your hand till the *quick-silver* be killed: then take the whites of two eggs and bray them with the *quick-silver* and spittle, till they be as an ointment; spread these upon a list that will go round about the beasts neck, let it be as broad as your fingers; first cut away the hair, and then tie your list round about, and sew it up; they will come to it, and it will kill abundance

of them. And in several places about the beast daub on some *train-oil*.



GARGET.

For the Garget in the Throat of a Cow.

IF you have an ox, or cow, or bullock, that hath the garget in the throat, it comes for want of water; it will cause a swelling under the sides. The remedy is, first to cast the beast, then cut the skin through in the midst of the swelling, and flea the skin from the flesh so far as any swelling goes: then take of the whitest *wood-ashes* that you can get, sifted fine; mix them with some mouldy, stale, old piss: stir them well together, and wash the sore therewith.



GARGET.

Another for a Garget at the root of the Tongue of a Cow.

A GARGET at the root of the tongue, is a certain swelling under the root of the tongue, which causeth his head and face to swell also, and to froth at the mouth; he will then forsake his meat, with often gulping at his throat. The remedy is, first cast him in soft straw, from bruising his body; then take his tongue in your hand, and pull it out as far as you can, and with the point of a sharp pen-knife slit down the middle vein an inch, right under the tongue—and there will come forth black blood and water, which comes from the gall; then rub the place with *salt* and *vinegar* mingled together, and it will cure.

Proved.

GARGET.

For the Garget in the Gut of a Cow or Bullock.

THE signs are these: the beast will run at the eyes, drivel and slaver at the mouth, with a sad heavy countenance. For remedy, take an *egg-shell* full of *tar*, and put it down her throat—then take two handfuls of *salt*, and put it into a pint of *verjuice*, and put it down the beast's throat with a horn, then drive her to and fro till she dung. Keep her fasting four hours after. Proved.



GALL,—OVERFLOWING OF.

For the over-flowing of the Gall, in a Cow or Bullock.

THE signs are, extraordinary foulness of the body, and slavering at the mouth. The remedy; take an *egg-shell* full of *tar*, and put it down her throat, having before a pint of *verjuice of vinegar*, and a penny-worth of *cloves* beaten; boil the verjuice and cloves together, and when you take it off the fire, put in two good handfuls of *salt*, and give it her blood-warm with a horn immediately after the *egg-shell* full of *tar*, and drive her to and fro.

Proved.



PISSING RED.

For a Horse or Cow that makes Red Water.

TAKE a *red herring* with a hard row, and cut it as small as you can, and put it into a quart of strong *beer*, and give the beast it blood warm, and in twice giving it is a cure. Proved.

MANGE.

For a dry scurvy Mange, although it be from the Head to the Tail, of Horse, Cow, Dog, or any thing else.

FIRST scrape off all the scurf with an old curry-comb or piece of knife; then take two ounces of the *oil of turpentine*, and as much strong *beer*: mix them together, and shake them well in a glass vial; then anoint the horse where he is peeled and mangy: a week after dress him again if you see any mattery running places, else not: tie him up with a strong halter, till it hath done working, for it will smart terribly. When you have killed the mange, to make the hair come again, wash it two or three times with a little strong *beer*, now and then, and it will make the hair come quickly and thick. Let the beast stand in at dry meat the time of the cure. This is a rare receipt. Proved.

~~~~~  
STRAIN.

*For a Strain in the Pastern, Back or Sinews.*

A CHARGE of *crown-soap* and *brandy-wine* applied hot, and heated well in with a hot iron, is marvellous good: keep him out of the water for a week after, 'till you see him go well. This soap and brandy-wine is an excellent cure for a strain newly taken, or new swelling, or soft swelling; but if it be old done, and the swelling as hard as a bone, then you must first anoint it with the *oil of turpentine* and *beer*, and two or three days after apply the charge of soap and brandy, and it will take it quite down. Proved.



## COLD.

*For a Swelling that comes by reason of cold or wind getting into the wound, whether it be in the head or any part of the body.*

IF the swelling in the head cause a thick film over the eyes, then follow the directions under written. If the swelling comes by reason of wind or cold getting into the wound, to take out the heat and rankness of the swelling, you must anoint it all over with an ounce of the ointment of *populeon*, or more if the swelling be great; anoint it twice a day at first, and as it falls fewer times will serve; in the mean time do nothing to the wound, till the swelling be almost gone. When the swelling is almost gone or down, wash the wound with *chamberlie* and salt, or *vinegar* and salt. and heal it up with your healing salves. If he get a wound in his face or head, and the wind get in and cause it to swell, when you have taken away the swelling by anointing it with this *populeon*, it may be you shall see your beast to have lost his sight, by reason of some thick film that hath covered his eyes. For remedy, when you have first taken down the swelling, do thus: slit a little hole upon the bone of the cheek with a sharp pointed pen-knife, and then put in your cornet-horn, and work up the point thereof between the skin and the flesh, close up to the eye: then take a little bit of new canvass, and cut it three-square, and roll it up round the length of your thumb; mix some salt and fresh butter together, and strew some salt upon the butter, although the butter be salt, and spread it on both sides the canvass; then roll it up round, and thrust it up into the



hole, and there let it be: over it lay a little piece of canvass, with some *Burgundy pitch* spread upon it, to keep out the cold and wind, and it will draw and drain the eye very clean and clear. This being done, put a little piece of fresh *butter*, with a corn or two of *salt* into the eye; and put in a piece of *butter* into the hollow hole above the eye: anoint and rub it well in, that it may drain down the eye. For a blow with a cudgel, whip, stick, or a haw in the eye, though you think the horse will lose it, this course taken, will remedy it in a short time.

Let blood in the temple-vein for a hot rheum—and likewise when a horse's eye-sight fails with hard riding or much straining; nevertheless you must strike the flume cross the vein, and then the rheum will stop, and the vein will knit up of itself. This is a great means to stop a hot rheum that comes down to a horse's eye. When you let a horse blood on this vein at any time, you must cord him about the neck, and when he hath bled as much as you think good, to keep the cold and wind out of the vein, you would do well to pitch and flock it. For a hot rheum, hard riding, or over much straining, give this drink fasting, to clear the stomach, and cleanse the blood and lights, viz. one ounce of *turmeric*, half a quarter of *aqua vitæ* or *brandy*, two or three spoonfuls of *white-wine vinegar*, a quart of the best *beer*; give it blood-warm. But if there be a kind of white glass in his sight, then it can be no cure.

Likewise, if you have a young horse that you think will be moon-blind, then you must take up the temple-vein in the wane of the moon, doing with your cornet-horn as before



you were taught, and put a piece of *butter* in his eye, and a piece in the hole of his eye. If it be a hot rheum, his eye will water and look red below. Let him come into the cold wind as little as you can. If it be a film, if it be thick, white, blue, though it hath been for half a year, then do as ye were just directed in this receipt, and no otherwise. Proved.

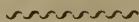
~~~~~

COWS THAT CANNOT CALVE,— FOR.

THE signs are apparent; they will look dull about the eyes, and seem to be almost dead, which shews the time of calving is then; and they will not at all strive for themselves. If they have been a while so, their milk will nearly dry up, and seems to look full of inward sickness, and wanting to calve, but cannot. To help them, if they are lying, raise them, and when you have them very fair, you then may perceive, about an inch within their bearing, a sort of a string or membrane that binds very tight; then take a very sharp pen-knife and cut that string right above and below, so that the calf may come forth, for you may then draw it from her easily. Be sure that you take no more of the cleaning away than what is loose—lest you do harm to the cow, perhaps the remainder will soon follow; then take *rosin* finely powdered, and dust it well on the calf-bag, and what remains of the cleaning, and thrust it up to its place again; but let it be remembered, that, before you begin, you give, in order to strengthen, nourish and comfort her, a quart of strong *beer* or *cider*, mulled

with eggs, ginger, butter, and molasses, and after you have drawn the calf away, a good mash made of malt, and let her be kept warm, with nourishing food for some time; and by this doing she will recover and do well.

Proved.



COUGH.

For a Cough in Oxen.

A NEW cough may be soon removed. Put one gallon of *spring water* in a vessel, and take *barley malt* a double handful, *bean flour* better than half as much, *stitchwort* an handful, bruise the stitchwort, and put all together into the water, and stir it; let it stand twenty-four hours, then either morning or evening give it your beast with a horn, half at a time, one day after another. When you perceive he mends, you may give it him four or five times every day.



INWARD DISEASES.

For the cure of most Inward Diseases in Cattle.

TAKE of the roots of the tall *rattlesnake weed*, a good quantity thereof; some wash them, others does not; I rather think to shake the earth from them to be best, however bruise them well, and put them into a gallon or two of spring or running water, and let it steep twelve hours or more. When you use it pour off half a gallon thereof and give it your beast cold; you may repeat it three mornings, and you will find it excellent to relieve those disorders. If your cattle are very poor, it will help them much to bleed in the neck the first morning you begin to drench.

Proved.

N. B. Those drinks are exceeding helpful to poor cattle in the spring. You should not boil these roots on any account, for when boiled they are poison and immediate death to cattle; but for a horse you may.

~~~~~  
CUD.

*For Cattle that have lost their Cud.*

AN ox, or any other beast, will mourn and eat nothing, because he cannot digest what he has already eaten, if he happens to loose his cud, as perhaps by some occasion it may fall out of his mouth; to remedy this, take part of the cud out of another beast's mouth of the like kind. If it be a cow that wants her cud, they take part of the cud of another cow, giving it her to swallow down, and she will be well; and so the like of other beasts. Others bruise a quantity of the herb called *cudwort*, and put to it a quantity of *hog's fat*, or *butter*, and so makes the beast that hath lost its cud, swallow it, and it will mend. Others put a piece of *leaven*, (rye is better than wheat) into the beast's mouth, and thereby it will recover. But if it be of a long standing, so that the creature is far spent and wasted, take out its tongue, prick the vein under it with an awl in two or three places, so that it bleed plentifully, and it will get well. Proved.

~~~~~  
SWELLED.

For Cattle that are Swelled by eating green Corn, or such like.

YOUR cattle will be in danger of death, without a speedy remedy, if through the negligence.

of the keeper they eat of corn, barley, wheat, or rye, before it be ripe. To help them, some people drive them up and down, and jump them over a fence, backward and forward, until the swelling assuage, which is very good, and they often recover thereby. Others throw a new laid egg, shell and all, into the beast's mouth, and break it therein, making it swallow it with ale or beer. Some take a handful of nettle tops, well bruised and strained, with wine or honey water. Others stamp or strain juniper leaves or green berries, with wine, and gives it the beast; some give the beast, in ale or beer, soot and the hard roe of a dry herring, well bruised; but let it be remembered, with either of these remedies, all which are approved, that you be sure to rake your beast well for the better opening of the passage.

Proved.



PALATE DOWN.

For the coming down of the Palate of the Mouth in Cattle.

THE palate of the mouth of a beast, by hard work, will be apt to come down, but seldom otherways. Signs are, they will often sigh, and would fain eat, but cannot. The cure is, first throw the beast on some soft place, then with your hand put it up again; when up, then prick or cut the palate so as it bleeds; then rub its mouth and palate well with *honey* and *salt*, well mixed, and turn the beast to pasture, for he must not eat hay nor dry meat. If it should happen in the winter, let his food be wet bran, or green corn.

Proved.

FRETTING, OR GRIPING.

For Fretting or Griping in an Horse's Belly.

THIS disease will make the horse to tumble and wallow with all four feet upwards, with a griping wind in the guts. You may see some horses in such extreme pain, that they will swell therewith as if they would burst, and will endanger the breaking of their bladder, and in this case they cannot dung. For remedy, take a quart of cold *salt beef*, or *pork brine*; if you cannot get a quart, get a pint; put it into a horn and pour it down cold. After this brine is down, anoint your arm with *sallad oil* or *butter*, and rake him, and pull out as much dung as you can, to give him all the ease you can; then take a good big *onion*, and peel off the outward rind, then cut it length-ways and cross-ways in many places, then roll it up and down in a handful of *salt*, and what salt it will take up, put it into a hollow pie of butter; but before you put it into his fundament, anoint your hand and arm with butter and sallad oil, and run up the onion thus rolled in the salt and put into the butter, as soon as you can, and there leave it; then tie up his tail as close to his rump as you can: being tied with a chord, fasten the cord to his girths, that it may keep in the onion and butter; then lead him out and walk him, and in a quarter of an hour's time it will purge exceedingly. It will cleanse his maw much, and cleanse his guts and kill the worms. Let his tail be tied but a little while, that he may purge freely: prick him in the mouth with your cornet-horn the first thing you do. The next day morning give him a comfortable drink, made of an ounce of *horse-spice*, a quarter of a pint of *white-wine vinegar*, with a pint and a

half of strong *beer*; put them together, and give it to the beast blood warm fasting, and he will do very well after it. Give him bursted oats, or a mash for two days after it, and warm water the day you give him this drink.

Proved.

BLEEDING AT 'THE NOSE, &c. TO STOP.

To stop bleeding at the Nose, or in the Mouth, where the Fleam or Knife hath cut a great gash: or at another place, even a vein.

FOR any of these, when nothing will stop it, this following will: First, take a chafing-dish of hot *coals*, laying them one upon another, and let the horse's mouth be over the smoak all the while, as the blood doth fall out of the horse's nose and quench them, so you must blow them up with your breath again, till the coals have burnt the rags as black as a coal, which when you perceive, take them as they are burnt black and bled upon by the horse, and put them up into each nostril an hand high—then hold up his head, and have in readiness three or four quarts of strong *beer*, and pour it down his throat, to wash down the smoak and clotted blood which lies in his throat. If he snort the burnt rags out, have other burnt hot rags in readiness to put up his nostrils. And you must remember, as well when you fume him, as when you have stopped his nostrils with burnt rags, to be often pouring down his throat cold beer, because the blood returning a contrary way will choak him. 'This course will stop bleeding at the nose of a man. If an horse's mouth be cut with a fleam at any time when you let him blood in the mouth, and the

flam glance and cut a gash in his mouth, and that it bleed so that you know not how to stop it, then take some of these burnt rags, and lay them as hot into the wound as you can, and afterwards take another clean rag and lay it over the wound to keep in the burnt rags. and tie on each side his teeth a small string overthwart to keep it close to for 24 hours ; at the end of which time you may take off the cloth, but let the burnt rags lay in the wound as long as you please, for they will draw and heal mightily : when they come out you may put in more, and do as you did before : and so for a quitter-bone, if you cut it till all the veins bleed, and you cannot staunch the blood, then take of these hot burnt rags and fill the hole full, and they will stop the blood in a very short time ; and let it lie there for twenty-four hours, and they will draw it as white as can be, so that you may see what to do afterwards. This will stop the blood either at nose, or in any wound.

Proved.



SUPPOSITORY.

Suppository to supple the Guts, to dissolve and send forth all dry and hot Excrements.

FIRST rake him, then take a great candle of four in the pound, and cut off three inches at the smaller end, then anoint the other part, being the bigger end, with *sallad oil* or *fresh butter*, and so put it up into his fundament ; then hold his tail to his towel half an hour, or tie it close to his towel with a strap of leather, and fasten it to his sursingle, and in half an hours time it will be dissolved : then let loose his tail and leap his back, and trot him up and

down till he do begin to empty and purge himself, for by this means it will work the more kindly. This is the most gentle of all suppositories. Proved.

ANOTHER

Suppository to be given, when you dare not without péril of his life give him any thing else inwardly.

TAKE of common *honey* six ounces, of *salt nitre* one ounce and a half, of *wheat flour* and of *anniseeds* in fine powder, of each one ounce—boil all these together to a stiff thickness, and so make it into suppositories: anoint these as you did the former, and your hand also, and so put it up into his fundament the length of your hand; then tie his tail between his legs, for an half hour, in which time the suppository will be dissolved, then ride him and order him as before. This is very good, especially in case of surfeits or inward weakness: rake him first, and keep him warm. Proved.

ANOTHER

Suppository to purge Phlegm

TAKE a piece of *Castile soap*, pare it and bring it into the fashion of a suppository, put it into his fundament, and order him as before. Proved.



DROPSY.

The Dropsy, or evil Habit of the Body.

THE dropsy is an evil habit of the body, which is engendered by surfeits, and unreasonable labour, altereth the colour and complexion of an horse, and changeth the hairs in such an unna-

tural sort, that man shall hardly know the beast with which he hath been most familiar. The cure is, take a handful or two of *wormwood*, and boil it in *ale* or *beer* a quart or better, and give it the horse to drink blood warm morning and evening, and let him drink his water at noon.



MARES,—DISEASES IN.

Of the particular Diseases in Mares, as Barrenness, Consumption, Rage of Love, casting Foals, hardness to Foal, and how to make a Mare cast her Foal.

IF you would have a mare barren, let good store of the herb *agnus castus* be boiled in the water she drinks. If you would have her fruitful, then boil good store of *motherwort* in the water. If she lose her belly, which sheweth a consumption of the womb, you shall then give her a quart of *brine* to drink, *mugwort* being boiled therein. If your mare through high keeping go into extreme lust, so that she will neglect her food through the violence of fleshy appetite, as it is often seen amongst them, you shall house her for two or three days, and give her every morning a ball of *butter* and *agnus castus* chopped together. If you would have your mare cast her foal, take a handful of *betony* and boil it in a quart of *ale*—and it will deliver her presently. If she cannot foal, take the herb *horse-mints*, and either dry it or stamp it, and take the powder or juice, and mix it with strong *ale*, and give it the mare, and it will help her. If your mare, from former bruises, or strokes, be apt to cast her foals, as many are, you shall keep her at grase very

warm, and once a week give her a warm mash of drink. This secretly knitteth beyond expectation.

~~~~~  
VENOM,—OF DRINKING.

*Of drinking Venom, as Horse-leeches, Hen's-dung, &c.*

IF your horse have drank horse-leeches, eaten hen's dung, feathers, or such like venomous things, which you shall know by his panting, swelling or scouring, you shall take the herb *sow-thistle*, and drying it beat it into powder, and put three spoonfuls thereof into a pint of *ale*, and give it to the horse to drink.

~~~~~  
LAMPAS.

EXTIRPATION by *burning* is the regular practice, and when both neatly and expeditiously performed, is the only best and sure method of cure. Proved.

~~~~~  
LAMENESS.

*For Lameness in the Joints or other parts, where there is no outward mark.*

THERE is only one way of fixing, to a certainty, upon the *seat of defect*, without a great chance of being deceived, where there is no outward distinguishing marks: To know exactly in such cases where the lameness lies, you must see the horse go all paces (if he is able) of walk, trot, and gallop, with the strictest attention; during which let your eye always drop to the hoof of each leg, and come observantly up every joint in succession, when you will, nine times out of ten, instantly perceive the part that is lame. Such lameness is generally



brought on by sudden jerks, twists, or extreme pressure on the different joints. The first step to a speedy relief, is to bleed, by way of unloading the vessels, and to assist in taking off the painful sensations of the affected part; after which rub every where about the part where the pain lies with a sponge dipt in *white wine-vinegar*, as hot as it can be used without scalding, for twenty minutes night and morning, following up that operation with ten minutes bathing with *extract of saturn*, and camphorated *spirits of wine*, each half a pint, mixed: or this—take *wormwood*, *lavender*, *rosemary leaves*, *camomile*, and *elder flowers* (for want of which the *bark*) of each four ounces: boil these in three gallons of water for half an hour, keeping them stirred below the surface; with this water bathe and rub the affected part with a sponge as hot as the beast can bear it; and then let the part be covered with a double piece of flannel of sufficient length and breadth for it—the horse having the advantage of a loose stable (if it can be obtained) in preference to a stall. Proved.



### STRANGLES.

THIS is a disorder very common to colts and young horses, by obstructions arising from an increased circulation of blood when brought into use, that hardly one in an hundred is known to escape. For a remedy immediately on its appearance, take *blood* from the neck vein, fully proportionate to the strength and condition of the creature. You will find at the same time a glandular swelling under the jaw, to which put a poultice made with *bread*, *milk*, *white lilly root* pounded to a paste (with a little



*olive oil* in addition, which you will get at the apothecary's or doctors); this put daily to it until it discharges matter; then it may be a little opened with a lancet, in such way as will be most likely to make it run plentifully—after this (the poultice having been repeated several days) wash the part well with water, blood warm, and apply the *horse-ointment* to heal it, mentioned in page 205. Proved.

~~~~~  
SPLENTS.

LET the splent be bathed with a sponge wet with the decoction of *wormwood*, &c. mentioned in the foregoing receipt, for at least ten minutes daily: then the part moistened with the following solvent, wetting a small piece of *tow* with the same, and binding it slackly on the part with a small flannel roller; remembering when the horse goes out, or to his exercise, that the application is renewed (after being dressed) upon his return to the stable: Take *extract of saturn*, and *oil of origanum*, each half an ounce, camphorated *spirits of wine* two ounces and a half; shake the two last well together, and add the extract: letting the bottle be well and constantly shaken at each time of using, if which precaution is not invariably used, the *oil of origanum* will, by disuniting itself from the other articles, swim upon the surface, and by coming out alone occasion loss of hair, which never does happen when the composition is properly shaken and applied. Proved.

~~~~~  
SPAVINS.

*For the Blood and Bone Spavins.*

FOR either blood or bone spavin proceed in the following way: For three days let the part



affected be substantially bathed with the following

### BATHING DECOCTION:

TAKE *wormwood, lavender, rosemary leaves, camomile and elder flowers* (for want of the *flowers take the bark*) of each four ounces—boil these in three gallons of water for half an hour, keeping them stirred below the surface;

this done let the affected parts upon all occasions be bathed with sponges or flannels for full half an hour night and morning as hot as the horse can possibly endure it; this to be succeeded by patiently rubbing it in downwards with your hand for a considerable time, wrapping the parts immediately round with a flannel roller; which done apply the *horse-ointment* (see page 205.)

Proved.

~~~~~

QUITTOR.

THE sooner the swelling is ripened the more expeditious is the cure; for which make poultices of *bread and milk*, a small portion of *barley meal*, and plentifully mixed with *white lilly root*, pounded to a paste, with about half an ounce of common *turpentine* dissolved in each, this should be placed upon the centre and surrounding parts (of a very considerable heat) every night and morning. When you find the matter begin to come from the affected part, after poulticing it, then it may be opened sufficiently large to let it run freely: this becomes the more absolutely necessary, as the longer it remains in the humor the greater is its property of hardening, and powers of devastation in

forming sinews in every direction. Daily rub it with a very small quantity of *compound tincture of myrrh* to cleanse the wound and strengthen the vessels to throw off the load that surrounds them ; after having thus done once in three successive days, take *yellow basilicon*, one ounce and a half, *red precipitate*, three drachms, reduced to powder, then mixed together : this spread thinly upon a piece of linen large enough for the part, and lay it on ; then cover the whole with a poultice of the aforementioned ingredients ; after these have been on two days, take them off and apply the *hore-ointment* to heal it (for which see page 205) and then give him a purge.



STRAINS.

For a Back Swanckt in the Fillet of the Loin : or for a Wrench in the Back-bone, about the Navel-place : or for a Strain in the Kidneys, by being over-burthened in the Hinder-parts, or overstrained in the Kidneys in Race-running.

IF you see any of these mischances to fall upon the back or hinder parts of your beast, then do thus, and no otherwise, for all those mischances above written : Take a hot sheep-skin fleaed off a sheep newly killed, apply it as hot as you can, with the fleshy side from his rump, all over to the midst of his back-bone, if it will reach so far : let it lie on twenty-four hours, and at the end of that time, lay another hot sheep-skin in the same manner to it, if need require, and you see the first will not do. Let the grief be ever so great, two hot sheep skins will do it, with the help of the drink next un-

der written ; but if the hurt be not great, the sheep skin will do it alone. It will make the horse to sweat much, it will draw out all the bruise, and strengthen the back of the horse exceedingly in a short time. But if your horse be so weak that he cannot stand nor go, then take a sack or two, and ropes, and throw them over a balk, and hang him for nine or ten days —when you first hang him, clap a hot sheep-skin to his rump and back for twenty-four hours —and at the end of the time, lay another hot sheep-skin to, and then no more. In the time of this cure, give him this drink if the strain be great ; if it be but small, this drink can do no hurt, but a great deal of good : Take *polygonatum*, commonly called *Solomon's seal* : you may have it at the apothecary's, but it is dear : take ten roots of it that may weigh three ounces, *polypodium*, of the oak, a quarter of a pound, two handfuls of *wood-betony*, or for want thereof, as much *garden-betony* ; cut it small, and if the roots be dry, beat them to powder. If they be green, cut them thin ; then take a gallon of strong *beer*, or somewhat more, put it into a kettle, and put the other three things to it, and let them boil till the beer be boiled half away ; then take them off the fire, and put into it a quarter of a pound of *butter*, and a quarter of a pound of *honey*, and give the horse of this to drink three times in nine days, in the morning fasting, and give him warm water to drink all the while, with a handful of *bran* put into it ; give him of the drink a quart at a time. Buy of these roots green, dry them, and beat them small, and keep them from wind and air for your use. If you

not get the root of *Solomon's seal*, make use of the other things; they may do well without—but better with it. Let him stand in, the time of the cure. To this drink you may add *penny-royal*, *clary* and *comfrey*: they are all knitting and strengthening herbs. Proved.



PLAGUE, PESTILENCE, GARGET, OR MURRAIN.

YOU must not let blood in this disease: you shall know it by these signs: he will hang down his head, and will gum thick matter at the eyes, as big as your finger's end, and much, and will go weakly, staggering, and his head will sometimes swell very big; and will fall away of his flesh suddenly, and yet feed very well. The cure is thus: take as much *diapente* as a hazel-nut, as much *dialpha*, as much *mithridate*, as much *saffron*, an handful of *wormwood*, an handful of *red sage*, *rheubarb* as much as an hazel-nut, two cloves of garlic; boil all these together in two pints of good *beer*, till it comes to a pint and a half, then give it him blood-warm fasting, and keep him very warm; and the next thing you give him must be a mash made of ground malt: let him drink warm water for a week, and sometimes bursted oats, now and then a little clean sweet hay: it is his sweating that does the cure. If one drink will do no good, give him another three days after to make all sure; it will not make him much sick. Half of the proportions of this drink will do wondrous well for a cow, if she have the like disease. Not tried, but very probable.

GREASE or COSTIVENESS.

A Purgation, when any Horse is sick of his Grease, or any Costiveness.

TAKE a pint of good old *White-wine*, and set it on the fire, then dissolve into it a lump, half as big as a hen's egg, of *Castile-soap*: and strain them well together on the fire: then take it off, and put into it two good spoonfuls of *Hempseed*, beaten into fine dust, and an ounce and a half of the best *Sugarcandy* beaten to fine powder, and brew all well together. Then having warmed the horse, to stir up the grease and other foul humors, give him this to drink, and walk him up and down a little after it, to make the potion work; then set him up warm, and after a little stirring up and down in the stall, if he grow sickish, give liberty to lie down. After two or three hours fasting, give him a *Sweet Mash*, then feed as at other times.



COLD.

For a violent Cold.

TAKE of *Wine-Vinegar* half a pint, and as much *Sallad-Oil*, brew them well together, and then put to it an ounce and half of *Sugarcandy* in fine powder, and so give it the horse, and stir him a little after.



SORE EYES.

An admirable Water for any sore Eye, or to clear any dim sight, as the Moon-Eyes, and the like.

TAKE the stone called *Lapis Calaminaris*, and heat it red-hot in the fire; then quench it in half a pint of *White-wine*, and thus do twelve times together. Then add unto it half so much of the juice of *Houseleek*, and with this bathe the

eye twice or thrice a day, and it is excellent against any imperfection therein.

~~~~~

### STRAINS, WIND-GALLS, or SWELLING.

*The following Balm hath never failed for any Strain, in the Shoulder, or other part, hidden or apparent; or any Wind-gall, Pain, or Swelling whatever.*

TAKE ten ounces of the best and purest *Goose-grease*, and melt it on a fire; then take it off, and put it into four ounces of the *Oil of Spike*, and an ounce of the *Oil of Origanum*: stir them very well together, then put it up into a gallipot:—With this ointment anoint the grieved part, the ointment being made exceeding hot; and rub and chafe it in with all painfulness, holding an hot bar of iron before it: and thus anoint once in two days, but rub and chafe it in twice or thrice a day at the least, and give the horse moderate exercise.      Proved Infallible.

~~~~~

SORE EYES.

For Dimness of Sight, or Blindness, if the Ball of the eye be sound.

TAKE *Butter*, *Rosemary*, *yellow Wax* and *Celandine*, stamp them all together, fry them in a pan, and then strain it and put it in a box and keep it close; it is excellent: Or thus, take an empty *Egg-shell*, fill it with *Bay-salt*, and burn it black, and take as much *Allum* as the bigness of your thumb and burn it; bray them together with *Fresh Butter* to an ointment; then with a feather anoint the sore eye, and put some *flax*, dipt in the white of an *egg*, over the eye, once a day, for a week, and once in the two days after; this will effect the purpose. Proved.

SPLINT, SPAVIN, or RINGBONE.

For any Splint, Spavin, Ringbone, Curb, or any other hard Knot or Excretion.

FIRST, having taken view of the excretion, clip away the hair as far as the excretion goeth and a little part more: then take a piece of *Allum'd* leather, made just as big as the place you have bared, and fit it to the same proportion. Then take a little *Shoemakers wax*, and spread it round about the very edge or verge of the same, leaving all the inward or middle part empty, and not touched with the wax, according to this figure O. Then take of the herb called *Asparagus*, which hath the virtue to raise blisters, and bruising it in a mortar, lay some thereof on the leather, in the void and empty place, which ought to contain the just quantity of the knot or excretion, and bind it fast thereon; suffering it so to lie (if it be in the spring or summer-time, when the asparagus hath its full strength and virtue) two or three hours. But if it be in the winter, then it hath less yirtue; then it is not amiss to revive the strength of the herb, if you add to it a drop or two of *Origanum*, and let it lie a day; and be sure to tie up the horse's head for two hours, for fear of biting it away.

When you have taken off the plaister, anoint the place with *Train-oil* warm, and you shall find no excretion.



FARCY, MANGE, SCAB, or LEPROSY.

For any Farcy, Mange, Scab, or Leprosy, whether in the Mane or otherwise.

FIRST let blood, then take a quart old *Urine* or *Vinegar*, and break into it a quarter of a

pound or better of the best *Tobacco*; then set it on a fire of embers, where it may simmer and not boil, and so let it stew a whole night: then strain it, and with this water wash the infected place, whether it be in the mane, or any other obscure place, and it is a certain remedy.



FOUNDER, SURBAIT, &c.

For any Founder, Frettize, Surbait, or any imperfection in the Feet.

FIRST pare thin, open the heels wide, and take a good store of blood from the toes; then tack on a shoe somewhat hollow: after, take of the best *Frankincense*, and rowling it in a little fine cotton-wool or bombast, with an hot iron melt it into the foot, betwixt the shoe and the toe, till the orifice where the blood was taken be filled up. Then take half a pound of *Hog's grease*, and melt it on the fire; then mix it with *Wheat-bran*, till it be as thick as a poultice. Then boiling hot, as is possible, stop up the horse's foot therewith; then cover it with a piece of an old shoe, and splint it up, and so let the horse stand for three or four days; then if occasion serves, you may renew it, otherwise the cure is wrought.



HOOFS.

To make Hoofs grow quickly; and to be tough and strong.

TAKE of the juice of *Garlick* seven ounces, of old *Hog's grease* two pound, of *Ass's dung* (for want of it *Cow's dung*) an handful: mingle them, and boil them all well together; then with this, both stop the horse's foot, and anoint the crownets of the hoofs and the effect is great.

SWELLING.

A general Salve for any sore Swelling.

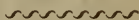
TAKE Turpentine, Black soap, Hog's grease, Green treat and Pitch, of each a little quantity; mix and boil them all well together, and apply it warm to the grief.



SORE EYES.

For a Pearl, Pin, and Web, or any Film on an Horse's Eye.

TAKE a new-laid Egg, and roast it very hard; then cleave it in sunder long-ways, and take out the yolk; then fill the empty hole with white Vitriol finely beaten, and close the egg again. Then roast it the second time, till the vitriol be molten. Lastly beat the egg-shell and all in a dish, and strain it, and with the moisture that comes from it, dress the eye.
Proved.



GLANDERS.

For the Glanders, an approved Cure.

TAKE a quarter of a pint of Verjuice, three spoonfuls of Sallad-oil, and two spoonfuls of Aqua vitæ; put one half into one nostril, the other into the other nostril, being blood-warm; then ride the horse somewhat speedily for twenty or thirty rods, and only spare him when he coughs; then set him up warm, and at noon give him a warm feed. Lastly, if you find him to grow sick, give him warm Milk from the cow.



BOTTS.

For the Botts.

TAKE Salt and Water, and give it the horse in a horn.
Proved.

PAINS, MULES, RATS-TAILS.

An approved cure for the Pains, Mules, Rats-tails, and the like.

TAKE green *Vitriol* half a pound, and boil it in a bottle of running *Water*, with *Allum*, *Mustard*, *Sage* and *Hysop*, of each an handful. Now the night before you apply this, anoint all the sores with strong *Mustard*, after they are made raw; then the next day wash them with the water before shewed, and the cure is certain.

BRITTLE HOOFS.

The best receipt that can be for Brittle Hoofs.

TAKE *Dogs-grease* a pound, and clarify it up with *Rosemary*; then mixing it with half so much *Cow-dung*, boil it, and hot or cold, stop the horse's foot therewith.

SCRATCHES.

To cure the Scratches.

TAKE a penny-worth of *Verdigrease*, a penny-worth of *Red-lead*, the like quantity of *Soap*; mix these together, and apply it plaister-wise, letting it lye three days and three nights. You must cut the hair close.

FARCY.

For the Farcy.

TAKE about one handful of *Rue*, and about ten cloves of *Garlick*, and pound them together; then take one penny-worth of *Aqua Vitæ*, and strain them through a cloth; then take a little *Black Wool* to drink up that moisture, and put into each ear half the wool, then sew up the ears together; then cut the forehead of the

horse, and put into the hole the inner rind of an *Elder*, about an inch long, or something more; keep him from wet falling into his ears the first day and night. Proved.

~~~~~  
CANKER.

*For to cure the Canker in a Horse's Mouth.*

TAKE half a pint of the best *White-wine-vinegar*, and half a pound of the best *Rock-allum*, and an handful of *Red Sage*, and boil them all together, and so wash the horse's mouth and tongue. Proved.

~~~~~  
SCRATCHES.

For to cure the Scratches.

TAKE *Soap* and *Salt*, and mix them together in your hand, and keep his feet dry, and tye a linnen cloth about them, and it will cure them. Proved.

~~~~~  
COLD.

*For a Horse that hath a Cold.*

TAKE new *Butter* unwashed, and without salt, and mix with it brown *Sugarcandy*, *Anni-seeds*, and *Liquorish*; but if the horse rattle in his head, put in two cloves of *Garlick* made in balls; do this three mornings together. Proved.

~~~~~  
SORE EYES.

For a Horse that hath gotten a Stroke or a Bite on the Eye.

TAKE a little *Honey* with a little grated *Ginger*; mix them together, and put it into the horse's eye with a feather: do this three mornings together. Proved.

ULCER.

A most certain and approved cure for the healing of any old Ulcer whatsoever.

TAKE *Mastick* and *Frankincense*, *Cloves*, green *Copperas* and *Brimstone*, of each a like quantity, and *Myrrh* double so much as any of the others; beat all to powder, then burn it on a chaffing dish of coals, but let it not flame; then as the smoak ariseth take a good handful of *lint* or fine *hards*, and hold it over the smoak so that it may receive all the perfume thereof into it; then when it is thoroughly well perfumed put the lint or hards into a very close box, and so keep it for use.

N. B. Now when you have occasion to use it, first wash the sore with *Urine* and *Vinegar* made warm; then dry it, and lastly lay on some of this lint or hards, and thus do twice a day, and it is a speedy and most infallible cure.

Proved.



STONE.

For the Stone.

TAKE a quart of old clear *Cyder*, and set it over the fire, then take a large *Onion*, or two middling ones, cut them small and put them into the cyder; let it boil a while, then take it off and strain it; then give it the horse to drink, luke-warm. Do thus as often as occasion require, and it will cure.

Proved.



GALL.

Diseases of the Gall.

BLEED in the neck vein; then give the purge for foundering in the body; for the fundament fallen out, wash it well with *Aalum water*, and put it up again.

CRICK.

For the Crick in the Neck.

FIRST shave off the hair at the roots of the ears and at the setting on of the head; then take of the *Oil of Spike*, or the *Oil of Petre*, and rub or anoint his neck well with it, and especially the joints at the setting on of the head; then take wet *Litter* or wet *Hay* and make a thumb rope, and wrap it all round his neck, from his ears to his withers, and let it continue for forty-eight hours: be sure you make your thumb rope pretty big, and bind it pretty close together; twice thus doing will be a cure. It would not be amiss if you were to bleed in the mouth between the second and third furrow.

Proved.



STONE.

For the Stone, or a Horse that cannot Piss.

TAKE a quart of strong *Ale* and put it into half a gallon vessel, then take *Horse-radishes* washed clean, bruise them, and put them into the ale; cover and stop the vessel so that no air come in; let it stand twenty-four hours; then squeeze it and strain it, and give the horse: ride him after, and he will piss; you must do this divers mornings.

Proved.



COLICK.

A Glister for the Wind Colick.

TAKE a quart of thin *Posset-drink*, *Penny-royal*, *Pellitory* of the wall, of each an handful; *Mallows* and *Plantain*, of each half an handful; and *Cummin-seeds* and *Saxafrage-seeds* of each one spoonful bruised, *Cammonile-flowers* one spoonful; boil them down to half the *Posset-*

ale, take half a pint thereof, dissolve therein half an ounce of the electuary called *Electuarium de Baccis Lauri*. Proved,

~~~~~  
**SCRATCHES.**

*For the Scratches.*

TAKE *Verdigrease* and burnt *Allum*, mix them together, and so apply it, keeping the horse dry. Proved.

~~~~~  
SPLEEN.

For the Spleen.

MAKE a plaister of *Oxycroceum*, and spread it upon sheep's-leather; lay it to the pain, and let it lye till it comes off of itself. Proved.

~~~~~  
**COLICK.**

*For the wind Colick.*

BOIL one spoonful of *Cummin-seeds* with a few *Camnomile-flowers*, in *Posset-drink*, is good to drink for the wind, for one that is costive in his body. Proved.

~~~~~  
BROKEN VEIN.

To conglutinate any broken inward Member, or broken Vein.

TAKE of *Dragant saffron* and the fruit of the *Pine*, the *Yolk* of *Eggs*, mixed with *Wine* and *Oil*; this given a horse to drink, will heal any inward member, or broken vein. Proved.

~~~~~  
**FLUX.**

*For the Bloody Flux.*

TAKE the herb called *Shepherd's purse*, and *Tanners bark* out of the pitt, and *Cummin-seed*,



bruise it and boil it in a quart of *Wine* or *Cy-der*, the cyder must be old; so give it to the horse blood-warm. Proved.

~~~~~  
SWELLING.

For the Swelling of a Horse's Back.

TAKE *Flax* or *Flax tare*, with the whites of *Eggs* and *Wheat-flour*; beat them all together, it will take the swelling down. Proved.

~~~~~  
STRAIN.

*For a Strain.*

HOG's *Grease* is very good for a sinew-strain, or any other part of the horse. Proved.

~~~~~  
HUMORS.

To drive back Humors.

TAKE *Vinegar*, *Salt*, *Bolearmoniack*, beaten together, and lay it on the sore; or *White-Lead* and *Sallad-oil*; or *Red-Lead* and *Sallad-oil*. Proved.

~~~~~  
CONSUMPTION.

*For the Consumption of the Liver.*

TAKE of *Sulphur*, and of *Myrrh*, one penny weight of each, pound them to fine powder; then take a new laid *Egg* and bray them well together; then put it into a pint of good *Wine*, and brew it well; being blood-warm give it your horse fasting.

N. B. Seperate such horses from sound ones, for it is infectious. Proved.

~~~~~  
KIB'D HEELS,—FOR

TAKE of wine *Lees*, mixed with *Soap* like an ointment, and then dress the sores therewith,

and it will in forty-eight hours heal any mules, pains and scratches whatsoever; the leaves and roots of *Elder* is good to dry up any of those evil humors. Proved.



FARCY.

FIRST bleed in those veins that doth most feed the farcy; then take of *Alloes*, one ounce, and boil it in three pints of *Water* until it come to a quart; then add to it one gill of *Molasses*, soft *Soap* as much, of *Yeast* half a gill, and give it to the horse blood-warm. Ride him moderately both before and after, and keep him warm for two or three days until the physick has done working. Proved.



GALLED.

For a horse new Galled with a Saddle or Collar.

AS soon as you take either the saddle or collar off, wash the galled place with *Water* and *Salt*, or *Urine* and *Salt*, and then sprinkle *Ashes* upon it, or *Wall Mud*, which is the best. If you was to get the root of *Clownswort*, and burn it to a coal, not to ashes, and pound it to a powder, and, after washing the sore, strew on some of the powder—it will quickly heal the galls although they be almost rotten and putrified.



TETTER.

A TETTER is a filthy kind of ulcer like unto a canker, only it is somewhat more knotty, and doth not spread but remaineth most in one place, and many times it will remain between the skin and the flesh like a knotted farcy, and will not break. The cure thereof is to make a strong lee with old *Urine*, *Ashes*, and green *Copperas*, and it will kill and heal them. Proved.

HAW or HOAKES.

For the Haw, commonly called the Hoakes.

THE haw is a gristle growing betwixt the nether eye-lid and the eye, and it covereth sometimes more than one half of the eye; from phlegmy humors which descend down from the head, and knitting together in the end grows to a horn or hard gristle: The signs thereof are a watering of the eye, and an unwilling opening of the nether lid, besides an apparent shew of the haw itself; the cure is, take a *Needle* and a double *Thread*, put it through the tip of the horse's ear, and put the needle likewise through the upper eye-lid of the horse upwards, and so draw up the eye-lid, and fasten it to his ear; then with your thumb put down the nether lid and you shall plainly see the haw; then put your needle through the edge of the haw, and with the thread draw it out so as you may lap it about your finger, then fasten the thread about your little finger to hold it, and with a very sharp knife cut across the gristle of the inside next the horse's eye, and so separating the skin and the fat from the gristle, cut the gristle quite out; then, cutting your threads, draw them clean out of the eye-lids and out of the haw; fill the eye with fine salt, leave no blood in the eye, and take good care that by no means you cut away too much of the wash or fat by the haw, or any part of the black that groweth about the end of the haw, for that will make your horse bleer-eyed. Proved.

~~~~~

### HIDE-BOUND.

*A certain cure for a Horse that is Hide-bound.*

FIRST let him bleed in the neck vein, then



give him this drink; take of *Celandine* two handfuls; if it be in the summer, the leaves and stalks will serve, but in the winter use the roots and all; chop them very small, and take one handful of *Worm-wood*, and *Rue* as much, chop them likewise; put all these into three quarts of strong *Beer*, and boil them till it come to a quart; then take it off and strain all the moisture from the herbs; dissolve in the liquor three ounces of *Molasses*, and give it the horse fasting blood-warm; then for a week together rub all the horse's body over with *Oil* and *Beer*, or *Butter* and *Beer* against the hair. Let his diet be warm mashies of *Malt*, or bursten *Oats*, *Rye* or *Barley*, and he will soon recover.

~~~~~  
BOTTES, &c.

For Bottes or Worms.

TAKE one gill of *Rum*, and add thereto two ounces of *Pilgrim's salve*, shake it well together and give it to your horse; its said it is a present cure.

ANOTHER.

TAKE of red *Precipitate*, as much as will lay on a half quarter dollar, and work it up into pills with sweet *Butter*, and give it the horse, and ride him after, and it will kill all the worms and bottes. Proved.

~~~~~  
FARCY.

*For a Farcy.*

TAKE three quarts of strong *Beer*, and dissolve in it six ounces of stone *Lime*, give it the horse in two drinks, one half thereof at a time, at two days distance, and it is a cure. Proved.

~~~~~  
GALLED SHOULDERS.

TAKE half a pint of *Rum* and a piece of hard

Soap, make a lather and wash the shoulders therewith, and it both hardens and heals them.

Proved.

N. B. Rattlesnakes' grease will do the like.

~~~~~  
ITCH.

*For the mad Itch.*

FIRST you should give a drying drink or two, made of forge *Water*, *Crocus Martis*, *Venice-turpentine* and flower of *Brimstone*, or the drink for the pocky *Farcion*, or the *Guaiacum* chips and forge *Water*, or any others of the drying drinks; then take *Soot*, *Lime* and soft *Soap*, and train *Oil*, and work them into a salve, and anoint the horse therewith. Proved.

~~~~~  
IMPOSTHUMES.

To Ripen Imposthumes.

TAKE of *Mallow* roots, common or marsh, and *White-lilly* roots, bruise them and boil them in milk, and thicken it with *Linseed-meal*, and apply it as a poultice, and it will ripen any imposthume whatsoever. Proved.

~~~~~  
CANKEROUS TUMORS.

*For Cankorous Tumors in the Feet.*

TAKE *Cow-dung*, *Tar* and *Hog's-fat*, and make a poultice thereof, and as hot as possible, (free from scalding) apply it round the hoof. Proved.

~~~~~  
VIVES.

For the Vives.

FIRST shave off the hair, then take *Shoemaker's wax* and spread it on a piece of *Allum'd* leather, and put this plaister on the sore; do

not remove it until it break it, and then renew it, and it will both heal and dry it. It is exceeding good for a pole-evil before it breaks.
Proved.



FOALD-CAST.

For a Mare that has Cast her Foal.

TAKE two spoonfuls of *Diapente* and brew it well in *Wine*, or *Strong beer*, or else a cordial of *Honey*, *Wine* and *Anniseeds*, well brewed together, and let her food be sweet mashes and comfortable drinks; what hay she eats, see that it be clean and sweet.



COSTIVENESS.

For Costiveness in the Body.

TAKE *Rye straw*, cut it fine; then scald some *Water* and wet it well therewith; then mix *Rye meal* or *Bran* with it, and let the horse eat it as hot as he can, and it will quickly loosen him.
Proved.



FEAVER.

For all Feavers in general.

IF you find your horse has a fever, first let him blood in the neck vein; then give him three mornings fasting one ounce of *Diapente* in *Beer*, *Wine* or *Cyder*; rub his limbs well twice or thrice a day, and let his diet be cooling, but no cold water.



BOTCH or IMPOSTHUMES.

For the Botch in the groin, or Imposthumes.

TAKE of *Snap-weed* or *Jumping-weed*, *Clownswort*, and *Elder-tops*, of each a like quantity, and boil them well; then strain them, and to the liquor add one pound of *Hog's-lard*, and

let it boil to the consistency of a salve; anoint the sore therewith until it be ripe, then lance it and wash the wound with *Soap-suds*, or *Water* and *Salt*, and heal the wound with ointment made of the aforesaid herbs, and it will cure it quickly.



BOTTS or WORMS.

An exceeding Drench for Botts and Worms, or a Foul stomach.

TAKE an earthen pot, make a hole in the bottom and stop it with a spile; put in a little straw, and take about four or five lumps of white *Dung* of a hen, and three pints of good *Ashes*, as much chimney *Soot*, and put all these into the pot; then put to it two quarts of hot *Water*, cover the pot and let it stand one hour; take out the spile and draw off the liquor; then take a pint thereof and add to it one gill of *Hog's-lard*, give it to the horse blood-warm, and this drink will perfectly cleanse his stomach, kill the worms, and cause him to rope at the mouth abundantly. I would not advise it for a general drench, but in extreme cases.

Proved.

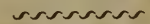


CHINE.

An approved cure for the Mourning of the Chine.

THE signs; the horse will run thick matter at the nostrils, which will be full of little red streaks. Take a great quantity of the middle green bark of *Elder* and put it into a middling pot; then fill up the pot with running or spring water, put it on the fire and boil it half away; then fill it up again, do so three several times; and at the last, when one half is boiled away, take it from the fire and strain it through a linen cloth; to that decoction add a third part as

much of the *Oil of Oats*; for want of that *Olive-oil*, or *Hog's-grease*, or sweet *Butter*, and being warmed again, take a quart thereof and give the horse to drink, one hornful at his mouth and another at his nostrils, especially at that which runneth most. Give it him fasting, for it not only cureth this disorder, but any sickness proceeding from any cold; it would be good to use to his bodysome wholesome friction. If it be in the summer, let him run abroad; If in the winter, stable him, and let his diet be sweet hay, warm water and mashes.



FISTULA:

An approved cure for a Fistula.

TAKE two large handfuls of the right *Arse-smart*, pound it, steep it in water all night, and lay it on the fistula or pole-evil, then clap your hand on it and keep it there till you find the warmth come to your hand; then take the arse-smart and bury it, and throw the water you steeped it in, on the place you bury it; and as the arse-smart rots the malady will sink; it is a cure which has been often proved. Once may do, but you may do it four or five times.

N. B. The right *Arse-smart* has a red stalk, bears a white flower, and by tasting, it will be very hot on the tongue.



APOPLEXY, STAGGERS, &c.

For an Apoplexy, Falling-evil, Staggers, and Phrensy.

I met with some horses whose disorders were in effect a composition of the whole disorders as above; on a circumspect observation of their symptoms and signs, it did not appear that one particular of these was the cause, but that they all were united, and with sharp fits of an in-

terminating fever: They had been bad three days before I saw them, and had been bled in the neck; I immediately bled them in the mouth, and put some tar on their nostrils, and ordered them to be cloathed and kept warm; I ordered a friction of *Goose-grease Vinegar* and *Honey*, all melted together, and being hot rubed their poles and napes of their neck therewith very painfully; then added to this friction a little spirit of *Turpentine*, and rubed it well across their loins against the hair; then ordered a man with a good wisp of straw to rub them well for near half an hour; this cheered them a little, and began to set the blood and juices to work a little in their proper tone; then ordered some long dung to be got that would heat, and laid it on their loins, six or eight inches thick, and bound it close on; then I made a sovereign drink, of wild *Comfry Roots*, *Elecampane*, *Fennel-seeds*, *Garlick* a good quantity, of *Worm-wood*, *Ditany*, *Spice-wood*, *Bark*, *Ginger*, *House-hold Bread*, *Butter*, *Honey*, *Rosin*, *Molasses* and clear *Cyder*, prepared in the manner of the sovereign drink, for internal ailments, in this book recited, and gave it them: The same evening I used the aforesaid friction, rubed them, changed their dung, littered them with straw to keep them warm, and left them till morning, when I saw that they would recover with proper care taken, and that in a few days, and the disorder in a great measure broke. I followed the same that day and the next, and the day after I bled them in the mouth again, still doing as heretofore; after three days I gave the drink but once in two days, but continued the rubbing and friction, and the dung, renewing it twice a day, and they perfectly recovered in a little time, beyond the expectation of every person that

saw them, for every one concluded that it was not possible to recover them: There were other horses taken with the same disorder, which I was not with, but most of them died. Those things seems to be nearly calculated for these disorders; bleeding in these cases once or twice, or three times, a little at a time, is of good effect; the friction is certainly good, as it clears the head and brain, opens the vessels, and causes perspiration in them parts; also strengthens the loins, and drives the disorder from the kidney; the dung is a great help to the friction, as it keeps the loins and kidneys warm for the friction to do its office, and in a manner to draw part of the disorder and fever outwardly, which you may see by the dew on the loins when you renew your dung in its proper season; the drink is a strong antidote against poisonous qualities, or nourisher of feeble stomachs, a strengthener of weak lungs, nerves and arteries; the rubbing with the straw gives great circulation to the blood and juices, so that it mightily strengthens the limbs, and frees them from stiffness; I am quite of opinion, that these remedies will work a cure in any of those disorders. Proved.

N. B. Those disorders are infectious, therefore scperate the sound from the sick, and rub tar on their nostrils and on their bridle-bits, and let them drink with it; tar being often a preventer of infections; you may fume with a match of brimstone.



HOOFS.

For Brittle Hoofs.

TAKE *Hog's grease*, *Dog's grease* and *Turpentine*, mix them together, and anoint the hoofs therewith. *Dog's grease* is an exceeding good thing for a brittle hoof.

RING-BONE.

IF the callosity of a ring-bone does not spread itself below the coronet of the hoof, and is hard and bony, you may then take it out by applying a caustic, thus: Shave off the hair close, and apply the caustic made of *Stone-lime* and soft *Soap*, and let it lie on not more than twenty-four hours; in that time or less, if your caustic be good, it will penetrate to the very root of the ring-bone, and it will come clean out in fourteen or fifteen days. In the mean while keep some of your suppling and drawing salves to it, also keep it clean from filth and dirt; and when the ring-bone is out, apply your healing salves, and wash the wound with soap suds or lime water, or allum water, or whey, dressing once in twenty-four hours; when you see proud flesh arise, as it will, then scald it off with *butter* and salt, or burnt-*Allum*, or any of your eating powders. Thus do with care, and there will be no doubt of a cure. A ring-bone at first coming is easily cured, sometimes by a mild *Blister* only; if it should be obstinate and will grow, then first *fire* gently, and apply a *Blister plaister* or two, and when they are dry, make a poultice of *oat-meal*, *oil* and *vinegar*, and bind it on, and turn the horse to pasture, and it is a cure without much eye-sore.



FOUNDERING.

For Foundering of the Body.

THIS disease often proves of a very bad consequence, and is chiefly brought upon the horse by means of unskilful, careless, immoderate keepers and riders; the cure is, to *bleed* all his feet with a fleam on the top of the hoof, and then give him this drink; take nine or ten cloves of *Garlick*, of *Pepper*, *Ginger* and grains of *Paradise*, two penny worth of each; bruise

them well together, and put it into half a gallon of strong *Beer*, and give it at two drinks, a quart at a time; and afterwards give him nourishing food and comfortable cordials. Proved.



FOUNDERING.

For foot Foundering either old or new.

FIRST you shall, with a very sharp drawing-knife, draw every part of the soles of the horse's feet as thin as possible, even till you see the water and blood issuing forth; and be sure to draw every part alike, which can hardly be done without a butteris, and at the very sharp end of the trush of the horses foot you'll see the vein lie; then with your knif's end lift up the hoof and let the vein bleed, which as long as you hold open the hoof, will spin a great way forth; when it bleeds better than a pint close the hoof, and so stop the vein, and tack on his foot a hollow shoe, made for that purpose; that done, clap a little tow, dipt in hog's grease and turpentine, upon the vein very hard; then take two or three hard roasted eggs, hot out of the fire, burst them in the soal of horse's foot; then pour upon them hog's grease, turpentine and tar, boiling hot, and as much flax, dipt therein, as will fill up the hollow shoe; then lay on a piece of leather to keep all in, and splint it sure; in this manner dress all his four feet if all be foundered, otherwise no more than are; thus dress the horse three times in one fortnight, and without any further trouble you shall be sure to have the horse as sound as ever he was. Proved.



COUGH.

I HAVE been informed that an *Indian-turnip*, dry'd, and finely powder'd and mixt with *Bran*, is a certain cure for a cough.

SURFEIT.

For a horse when he is badly Surfeited.

TAKE four ounces of the inner bark of the white shaking *asp-tree*, and put it into three quarts of running water, boil it away to half a gallon; then take out the bark and dissolve one ounce of *Alloes* in the liquor, and add thereto one gill of *Rum*, one gill of *Molasses*, and give it the horse blood-warm as a drench. Proved.

N. B. I have been credibly inform'd, that this bark, of the white asp, is a remedy in all fevers.

POLE-EVIL.

THE decoction or oil of *snapweed*, two ounces, the oil of *turpentine* one ounce, mixt together, is an excellent thing for any fistula or pole-evil, either to heal it when broke, or to backen it, if near ripe to break it; but to backen, there should be an equal quantity of both. Proved.

STRANGLES,

For the Strangles.

BLEED under the tongue, and fume with the decoction of *Camomile*, and poultice with *bran vinegar*, salt and *hog's lard* and it will soon cure. Proved.

CANKER.

For a Canker, or sore in any part of the body.

TAKE a quantity of *poke roots*, and boil them in a quart of water until it comes to half a pint; then take six ounces of *hog's fat*, one gill of *tar*, and one ounce of the flower of *brimstone*, boil all together till the water is boil'd quite away; then use it for a common salve for any violent canker or sore. Proved.

SCOWERING.

An excellent Scouring for a Horse.

TAKE twenty *raisins* of the sun; pick out the stones, and ten *figs* slit; boyl them till they be thick; then take of the powder of *liquoursh*, of *anniseeds* and *sugarcandy*, made fine; then mix them, with the raisins and figs, all together to a stiff paste, and make balls of it; then roll the balls in *sweet oil* or *butter*, and give them to the horse as you see cause. Give him strong exercise both before and after you give him these balls. Proved.

HAIR GROW.

To make Hair Grow quick.

TAKE green *walnuts* and burn them to a powder; then mix the powder with *honey*, *olive oil* and *wine*, then anoint the place therewith, and it wonderfully increaseth hair very soon; or take *southerwood* and rusty *bacon*, and make it into a salve, and it will bring hair quickly. Ashes of dead bees, mixt with any sort of oil, will do the like.

CROWN-SCAB.

IT grows in a cankerous matter on the coronet and on the heels; the cure is to wash it well with *Vinegar* or old *Urine*, and then take *Dog's Grease*, *Bolcarmoniack* and *Turpentine*, well mixed, and apply it to the sore, and let the horse come to no wet, and this will cure.

WENS.

For Wens in any part of the Body.

FIRST *Sear* them with a hot iron; then heal them with the powder of *Honey* and *Lime*, and it is a present cure. Proved.

BOTTS and WORMS.

For Botts and Worms.

VARIOUS receipts are laid down for the cure, many of which are really very good, and I know not one in this book but what will free any horse from botts or worms, provided he is not too far spent. What botts or worms are, I need not describe, as I presume they are known to most that keep horses: The signs are, they will be knotted under the upper lip, and when those knots appear to have yellow heads they are far gone; with a speedy remedy cureable. They will be faint, and sweat standing in the stable, and sweat much at the roots of their ears, yet curable with a speedy remedy. But when he sweats at his fore bowels and his breath smells very strong and hot, then there is danger of his ever being cured: They will likewise, if not very bad, often rub their breech against a fence or post; look lean and jaded, the hair will stare; they won't thrive; often strike their hind feet against their belly; show signs of the cholick, lay down and stretch themselves, get up hastily, and immediately feed greedily: these are the principal signs: The cure is, if not incurable, first bleed him plentifully in the mouth, so as he may swallow down a large quantity of blood, or for want of that, take three pints of *Milk* and sweeten it well with *Molasses*; then give it him blood-warm, and let him stand near an hour, so as the botts may loose their hold, which they will immediately do, and fill themselves with the blood, or milk and molasses; then get one pint of *Linseed-oil*, give him one half, and the other next morning: It is so safe, that you may ride him or work him immediately; this

oil kills them in an instant: I have known the experiment often tried by dropping a bott or worm into it, and they instantly died: It has been tried by other common oils, but the effect is not so soon, although it is believed that most oils will kill them, especially those that are of a close texture; therefore if you use this remedy alone, and that before your horse is too far spent, which by the signs before recited you may readily know, as being taken from observation and experience, you need not lose any creature with that disorder, and your horse will afterwards thrive in an extraordinary manner; so that it would not be amiss to give a horse thereof once or twice in a year, especially in the spring, just before he goes to pasture: Also it will purge away molten grease and gross humor in a great degree, and in a manner prevent disorders of the like nature; the nature of its working has been found by experience to be quick and free from trouble. The original or breeding of the botts has gone through divers speculations, but an ingenious friend informed me, that their progeny is actually from the horse-bee in the summer season, and are some months before they come to maturity: The manner, he says, is thus: he having observed a horse to have voided a bott with his dung, immediately took part of the dung, with the bott, and some earth, and put all together in a glass tumbler, and covered the tumbler close, and by often viewing, he found its wings, legs and all parts to form, spring and grow, until it became a perfect bee, and that about the time those insects are first seen. His opinion is, that the horse imbibes them from the number of knits those insects fix on their coats, by nibbing and gnawing themselves:

The certainty of which way the horse receives them, I shall leave to the ingenious to judge, but recommend the above remedy as certain.

Proved.

N. B. The decoction of *Savin*, and *Nitre* dissolved in it, well sweetened with *Honey*, will kill worms; or botts in horses: This deserves to be ranked with some of the best for botts or worms, and is very safe for children that has worms. The decoction of *Savin* and hickory *Ashes*, mixed with their feeds, will both prevent their breeding and kill them.



BLEEDING,—OBSERVATIONS ON.

THE drawing of blood is certainly of great benefit in many disorders, as is laid down in this book, yet I cannot go the common road of many that recommend the frequent practice of it to healthy sound horses; by frequent practice thereof on such horses, I am certain it is a great diminisher of their natural strength, and takes from them two or three years that nature has allowed them: I grant, that to bleed a horse that has no apparent ailment upon him, let it be in what season of the year it happens, may suddenly make him thrive and get fat beyond expectation; then immediately to bleed to prevent the yellows, as generally from that case springs the disorder, is a general maxim that experience makes perfect: Therefore, I shall prescribe a few simple rules, that has been experimentally known and often practised by those that were very able judges of horses both internally and externally, far exceeding that custom of bleeding healthy sound horses in general, especially those that are much stabled. If you, twice in the summer, or once will do, take a double handful of green *Rue*,

shred very small, and give it your horse in *Bran* at twice feeding, it will enliven him much, prevent worms and gross humors, and mightily refine the blood: Also in the winter season, about Christmas time, if you wet your bran with half a pint of stale *Urine*, for nine mornings successively, you will find it to be very serviceable to your horse, for it will occasion a free passage to the blood juices to work in their proper tone, and thereby, perhaps, prevent gross humors and worms in the spring: I am certain that it will greatly strengthen their wind, when fed altogether on dry meat; you may also, near the spring, give in several feeds, eight ounces of the *Flower of Brimstone*, but by no means the *Roll or Stone Brimstone*; the reason is, it is impossible for you to pound it fine enough to give inwardly, and not unlikely but a worse disorder might ensue than what you intended to prevent: The flower is safe, and will quickly work and answer the expectation, which is to keep the blood and juices in their proper tone and proportion. You may also in the spring and fall take of smith's *Forge-water*, three pints, dissolve therein one ounce of any clear *Turpentine*, one ounce of *Crocus Martis*, one ounce of the *Flower of Brimstone*, and give it to your horse as a drench in the following manner: Take a hornful of the liquor cold as it stood, and put with the point of a case knife, part of the *Brimstone* and *Crocus Martis* on the liquor, in the horn, then throw it down; and so do in like manner till he has received it all: This purges by urine, and will work off any gross humor, and refine the blood and juices greatly; you may also take of *Forge-water*, three quarts, and put therein eight ounces of *Guia-*

cum-chips, which you may get at the apothecaries, *Sarsaparilla* two ounces, *Raisins* of the sun four ounces, their stones being taken out; boil all together until one quart is consumed, then take it off and strain it, and add thereto, one quart of *Wine*, clear *Beer* or strong *Cyder*, and sweeten it well with *Honey*, and give it to the horse blood-warm, at two drinks: you may add half an ounce of the *Flower* of *Brimstone* to each drink: By thus doing, with reasonable labor, (accidents excepted,) you may always have a healthy sound horse, free from colds, strains, wind-galls and gross humors.

N. B. The decoction of *Sassafras-root* is very good to wet the bran, spring and fall, every other morning for ten days.—The decoction of *Spice-wood* is an exceeding comforter and nourisher of any lean poor horse.

~~~~~  
BLEEDING.

. *To stop Bleeding at the Nose.*

TAKE two small whip cords, and tie them very hard just beneath the elbows of his fore legs; then get wet cloths or hay and lay it on the nap of his neck, and it will stop presently; the hay or cloths must be kept wet. Proved.

~~~~~  
BOTCH or IMPOSTHUME.

For the Botch in the groin, or any Imposthume.

TAKE a piece of *Allumed* leather the bigness of the sore, and spread on it some *Shoemaker's* wax; lay it on the sore, and that will ripen it. When ripe lance it to let out the filth, and wash the wound with *Allum* water, and anoint it with the ointment called *Egyptiacum*, which will cure it and heal it soon. Proved.

DROPSY.

For the Dropsy, or evil habit of the body.

TAKE one gallon of *Beer*, and put into it a good quantity of *Worm-wood* seed, leaves and stalks, and boil it to a quart; skim it and strain it; then put into it three ounces of *Treacle*, of long *Pepper* and *Grains* beaten to powder one ounce and a half, bleed in the neck-vein after he has stood a while; give him the drench, and rub his fore legs well with *Train Oil*, and turn him to pasture. Proved.



DROPSY.

For the Dropsy in Man or Beast.

TAKE *Broom* and make diet-drink thereof, and use it as you see cause. Proved.



STONE.

For the Stone, an excellent receipt.

TAKE of *Nitre* half an ounce, of *Horse-radish* a good root, scrape the root fine, then infuse it in a quart of *Wine* or old clear *Cyder*, to which you may add five or six *Egg-shells* finely powdered; let it infuse twenty-four hours, and give it your horse, but you may give it him sooner if the case require. Proved.



BOTTS or WORMS.

To kill Botts or Worms.

YOU shall know whether your horse be troubled with botts or stomach-worms by these signs: He will squitter and dung them, and all of a sudden he will dung very small; in this case he will void small white worms of himself, he will be much knotted under his over-lip, the root of his tongue will be fry and yellow, his breath hot, sweat much as he stands in the stable, and will be very faint: Now if you see him

to sweat in the stable ; then know for certain that he is far gone, and is in great danger. For remedy, take *Turmerick* and *Anniseeds* of each take an ounce, one penny-worth of the flower of *Brimstone*, half a quarter of a pint of *Brandy*, or *Aqua Vitæ* ; beat the *Anniseeds* and *Turmerick* small, and then put all together into a pint and a half of strong *Beer*, except the *Brimstone*, and that lay upon the top of the horn when you are ready to give him the horn into his mouth : give this drink fasting, and let him fast four or five hours after it, and stand upon the bit, give him to drink warm water at night, the next day cold water, ride him after it, this drink will work pretty strong. If he has not been lately blooded, let him blood in the neck-vein, and in the third furrow of the roof of his mouth, with the end of your cornet-horn. This drink at once giving will kill the botts, and take him off his faintness, and much cleanse and purge him of tough gross humors in his body, upon which the worms do breed. *Culpepper* saith, that *Boxtree-leaves* are excellent good to kill the botts in horses ; they are hot, dry and binding ; you may put in a handful of them into this drink, and try conclusions.

Proved.



FOR THE BOTTS.

TAKE as much black *Soap* as a walnut, as much *flower* of *Brimstone* and a little *Garlick* bruised ; put these in a pint and an half of strong new *Beer* or *sweet wort* ; steep it all night, and give it the beast next morning fasting, and tie him up to the rack three or four hours after ; then give him warm water and what meat you please.

Proved.

VOMIT.

A rare Receipt to cause an horse to Vomit.

TAKE two of the greatest roots of *Polypodium* as you can get from the Oak, wash and scrape them very clean, and tie it to his snaffle or bit; then let it be steeped in *Oil of Spike* a whole night, and in the morning fasting, put on his bridle with the roots tied to his bit, and ride him softly and fairly an hour or better with it in his mouth; and if he be troubled with any rheumatick or flegmatick humor, or with any cold or filthy matter, which may any way pester, clog or annoy his stomach, this very thing will force him to vent and vomit it up at his mouth or nose, and it will cause him to cough and sneeze much, that you shall see him to send forth a great abundance of filth and evil slimy matter from his stomach and head, and in a short time he will become very clean in his body, for this will both refine his blood, and exhaust all the waterish humors in such sort, as by temperate ordering of him, and doing as heretofore is prescribed, you may keep him a long time sound, perfect and serviceable; and this you may give to an horse newly taken from grass, or to any other horse that hath taken a cold, or to any other filthy, foul, foggy or pury horse whatsoever: And this upon trial, upon all occasions before mentioned, you shall find to be most admirable; this being done, I conceive it to be very good to give them *White-wine* and *Honey*, and the cordial formerly set down. Proved.

~~~~~  
CURB,—FOR A.

THIS Curb always groweth upon the back-part of the heel of the knee of the hinder-leg, in a hard substance; I shall give no more signs,



for it is easy to be seen : The remedy is this, first tie up the contrary leg as you do for a blood-spavin ; then with an hot iron sear it length-ways down his leg upon the curb, till the skin look yellow ; then draw your hot iron across it, as you did for a blood-spavin, in too or three places ; then presently take an horse-nail and drive it through a stick, so that the point of the nail may come a little through the stick, the breadth of a straw, or a little more : then set the point of the nail to the fired places, and strike it, some ten or twenty times, according as the burning goes in several places, and as you see occasion : then take a handful or too of *Salt*, and rub it well in with your hand to stop the blood, and half an hour after, wipe the *Salt* off, and apply the charge of *Soap* and *Brandy* hot on, and heat it well in with a bar of iron ; and as your iron cools, slake it over it, to dry it in the better : let the charge lie on till it comes off of itself ; you may ride him every day after three or four days ; in the mean time, let him stand in the stable. Proved.



### QUITTER-BONE.

*For a Quitter-bone, old or new.*

THIS quitter-bone generally grows just above the top of the hoof on the hinder foot, and sometimes on the instep just above the hoof on the side of the foot ; but be in any place, this is the cure : First take up the vein in the small of the leg ; if the quitter-bone be on the inside of the leg above the hoof, then take up the vein on the inside of the leg : If it be on the outside of the leg then take up the vein on the outside ; this is the way to further the cure, and make all sure by taking up the vein which does feed it. You may see how to take up a vein, if you look into the receipt for a blood-spavin. For the



taking up of a vein is all alike be it where it will. After you have taken up the vein let it bleed well, and put into the wound some *Butter* and *Salt* : then with a little tow or hards, or a linnen cloth, wound about your instrument's end, search the quitter-bone to the bottom, and where you see the matter come out, there put in your instrument ; when you have searched the wound and made it clean, put into it a piece of *Arsenick* as big as a small bean, and put a little tow after it, and lay a little tow upon the top of the quitter-bone, with a linen cloth next, and a woollen cloth over all, tied on fast, that it may not come off ; then tie him up to the rack with a strong halter one day, till the anguish of the *Arsenick* be over, for fear he comes at it with his mouth ; let the *Arsenick* lie in forty hours, then take out the hards, and you shall see the hole in the quitter-bone look very black, and swelled more than it was before : It is the effects of *Arsenick*, therefore you need not fear, but as soon as you have pulled off the cloths and hards from the place, you may put his foot into a pail of cold water for a quarter of an hour, and let it soak ; or if a creek be near that you can lead him into it, if it be clear water, so that no sand or dirt get into the wound, and let him stand and soak his leg there for a quarter of an hour, for his leg must be once a day soaked, either in a pail of clean water or in the creek, for a week together, take off his wet hard cloths, and tie on dry ones, this is all you have to do till you see the core of the quitter-bone come out ; which when you see, make this medicine to heal it up ; take a penny-worth or good *Honey*, put it into a pipkin, and when it begins to be hot, put in a penny-worth of *Verdegrease*, and three or four spoon-fuls of *White-wine vinegar* ; boil them all together for half an hour,



then take it off the fire, and when it is cold take a little fine tow and dip into it, and put it into the wound, and lay a little dry tow or hards over that, and a linnen cloth over them, and bind them on with a string, and so dress it once a day till you see it begin to heal and then dress it but once in two days, and as you see it heal dress it the fewer times till it be whole : There will be a little space bare where no hair will come ; put in *Arsenick* but once, and although you tie him up to the rack because his mouth should not come to the *Arsenick*, yet give him meat for all that. Do but remember these two last cautions, and you need not question the cure, for it will be speedy. Proved.

Now suppose you meet with a quitter-bone that has been a long time in other farriers hands, that have so corroded and poisoned it that it is much swelled about the pastern and leg : In this case, you must first take up the vein on that side the leg that the quitter-bone grows on, to keep the humor back that feeds it, then put in as much *Arsenick* as a bean, as you were directed before, and so doing as it is there exprest, soaking his leg as you are therein taught, and when the core is out, heal it with the same salve that is there prescribed : but if there grows proud flesh whilst you are a healing of it, then scald it with *Butter* and *Salt*, and that will keep the proud flesh down : An old hurt in the foot may come to be a quitter-bone, and break out above the hoof, but a quitter-bone will never break out in the sole of the foot. Except you take up the vein, a quitter-bone is a very hard thing to cure. After the core is come out, it will not be amiss before you go about to heal it, to wash the sore well with *White-wine Vinegar*, and then apply the healing salve mention in the above mentioned part of this receipt.



## GLANDERS.

*A preparation before you give the Black drink for the Glanders, in the next following receipt.*

FIRST take blood from him ; if you do find it gross or phlegmatick, for otherwise he cannot possibly mend ; then instead of oats give him every morning, about 4 or 5 o'clock, *Wheat-bran* prepared, for four or five days together, and the water to drink that the bran is sodden in, which is to qualify and dry up the moist and bad humor abounding in him ; and then let him bleed in the neck, if you have not before. The next day rake him with your hand, and then give him this glisten: Make a decoction of *Mallows* one pint and an half, and put into it four ounces of fresh *Butter*, and of *Sallad oil* a quarter of a pint: administer it blood-warm, and then with a strap of leather tied to his tail and put between his legs, and the other end fastened to the sursingle, so strait that the tail may be close to his towel or fundament, that he cannot purge till it be loosened: this done mount his back and ride him gently an easy trot or footpace for half an hour ; then set him up cloathed and littered, with the bit in his mouth three hours, during which time he will purge kindly ; then give him *White-water* and hay, and at night a little oats, for he must be kept to a spare diet: The next day mix well together the powder of *Brimstone* and fresh *Butter*, and anoint all along two goose-feathers, and run a thread through each of their quill's ends, that you may fasten the thread to the top of the headstall of his bridle, and run them up as high as you can into each nostril, and so ride him an hour or two, and this will purge his head and lungs, and cause him to send forth much filthy matter ; but when you set him up, take them out, and an



hour after give *Hay* and *White-water*, and *Bran* prepared, which is mentioned in the beginning of this receipt; The next day give him his glister again, and let him rest for that day, but ordered in all things as before; the next day use the *Goose-feathers* again, and order him as you did before: And all this is but to prepare him for this after drink that followeth, but you must observe to keep him always warm, and let him be ever fasting and empty, before you give him any physick, and air him evening and morning if the sun shine, or if the weather be warm or calm: then three days after give him this drink following, called the Black drink.

*The Black drink for the Glanders.*

After having prepared your horse in the foregoing manner, take new made *Chamber-lie*, and of the best and strongest *White-wine Vinegar*, of each half a pint, then take of *Mustard seed* two or three spoonfuls, and make *Mustard* thereof with *Vinegar*, and grind it well; then put your *Vinegar* and *Chamber-lie* to the *Mustard*, and stir them well together; then take of *Tar* and *Bay-salt* of each alike, as much as may suffice, incorporate them well together, and convey as much thereof as two or three egg-shells will hold;—————having prepared these things, keep him over night to a very spare diet, and the next morning take and ride him first till he begins to sweat, then give him the *Egg-shells* filled with *Tar* and *Salt*, as before prescribed, and as soon as he hath taken that, give him with a horn the afore-named drink made of *Chamber-lie*, *Vinegar* and *Mustard*, all at the mouth, except two small horn-fuls which must be poured into his nostrils; which, when he hath taken, ride him



again as much as you did before, set him up, and cloath and litter him warm, and so let him stand upon the bit till three or four o'clock : then unbit, and give him a warm mash, and order him in all things, as is usual for horses taking Physick. Give him this medicine or drink every other third day, if the horse be strong, and if he be weak in body, once in three or four days : This is an infalliable cure, in three or four times giving, if it be rightly given, though he be far spent. Proved.

~~~~~  
WORMS.

To kill Worms.

TAKE *Bear's-foot* and *Savin*, *Lavender-cotton*, the flower of *Brimstone*, give it to him in *Sweet-wort* ; it will kill the worms, and turn them into slime ; ask for the powder of *Caroline* at the apothecary's it is as admirable a thing to kill worms as can be, you may give three or four pennyworth at a time in a pint and an half of *Sweet-wort*. It is a very safe thing. Proved.

~~~~~  
GLISTER.

*A Glister for a Sick Surfeited Diseased Horse.*

IF your horse be newly taken from grass, and that you hold it needful his body should be cleansed from bad humors, which either his grass or former surfeits might bring : First take him, and then give him this glister following, viz. Take *Mallows* three handfulls, *Marsh Mal-low-roots*, cleansed and bruised, two handfulls, *Violet-leaves* two handfulls, *Flax-seed* three spoonfulls, and as many of the cloves of *White-lilly roots* as you may easily hold in your hand ; boil all these in fair water from a gallon to a wine quart ; then strain it, and put thereto one



ounce of *Sena*, which must be enfused or steeped in the liquor three hours standing upon the hot embers; then put thereto, half a pint of *Sallad-oil*, administer it glister-wise blood-warm, and cause him to keep it half an hour or longer if you can; and the best time to give this glister, is three or four days before the full or change of the moon; but if occasion be, you may give it any other time: this glister is to be given to a foggy fat horse, which otherwise cannot be kept clean. It purgeth the guts abundantly, and it is chiefly to be given an horse that is newly taken from grass. And the next day after you have given him this glister, give him this drink following.

N. B. First observe this: When at any time you do administer glisters, you must do it in the morning fasting, except necessity urge the contrary. Secondly, you must not at those times suffer him to drink any cold water, no not with exercise, but either sweet mashes or white-water. Thirdly, it is very needful before you administer, that you rake him: and be sure you keep him warm.

~~~~~  
PURGE,—A.

TAKE the strongest *Ale-wort*, one quart, of *Honey* a quarter of a pint, of *Molasses* two ounces; mix and brew them all together, and give it him blood-warm; then keep him upon the bit six hours after, warm cloathed and well littered, and give him a sweet mash, and white water, and rack him with sweet wheat straw, oats and bran; this both purgeth and comforteth; two or three days after, give him this drink following.

GLISTERS.

Of Glisters and their use.

A GLISTER is given as a preparative to a purging drink; and a glister by cleansing the guts refresheth the vital parts, and prepareth the way before; wherefore I advise every farrier, before he gives a drink, whether purging or otherwise, if the horse be not at that time loose in body, that after blood letting, the next day he gives a glister: this done he may the better give what is requisite; otherwise if he gives the drink before the glister, he may stir and provoke the evil humors, which by reason of much costiveness and wind, and other impediments in his guts, to attempt to make their passage by a contrary way, which cannot be done without great hazard to the life of the beast. I therefore advise, if the beast be costive and bound in his body, to give a suppository or glister first, then his purging drink.

~~~~~  
*What a Decoction is.*

A DECOCTION is a broth made of divers herbs, as *Marsh-Mallows*, *Pellitory*, *Camomile*, and sometimes *White Lilly-roots*, or such like things, which we do boil in water to a third part; and sometimes instead of herbs and water, we take the fat of *Beef-broth*, or the broth of *Sheep's-heads*, *Milk* or *Whey*.

~~~~~  
What quantity of Broth or Decoction is put in to make a Glister.

FOR the quantity, we do administer according to the age, strength and greatness of the horse; for if he be of a strong and able body, of large growth and stature, fat and lusty, in this case we put in three pints; but if he be of a small growth, weak, sick, feeble or lean, in this case a quart is enough; we often put in half a pint of

Oil, of *Salt* two or three drams, and sometimes we put in *Verjuice*, and sometimes *Honey*, as we see cause. Drugs we use, as *Sena*, *Cassia*, *Agarick*, *Anneseeds*, *Oil of Dill*, *Oil of Camomile*, *Oil of Violets*, *Sugar-candy*, and such like.

~~~~~

*For the quantity of Drugs put into a Glisten.*

FOR the quantity of drugs you ought not to exceed the quantity of three ounces in one glister at the most, neither put in above four ounces of *Butter*, and let it be but blood-warm when you administer it.

~~~~~

What time is fit for an Horse to keep his Glisten.

WHEN you give it him, let him be empty, and before he receives it, rake him: After you give it him, let him keep it half an hour, it will do it the more good; the longer he keeps it, the more good it will do him: Hold his tail close to his fundament all the while.

~~~~~

### PURGE.

*A Purge for filthy Slime, and to carry away the peccant humors which Surfeits have ingendered.*

TAKE a pint of *White-wine*, or a quart of new *Ale*, which you can best get, as much of the best powder of *Mechoacan* as you can take up with a shilling at four times; put them together and give it luke-warm, ride him gently a mile or two, and set him up warm, and let him stand upon the bit five or six hours: then give him a warm *Mash*, and half an hour after give him *Oats* and *Bran* mingled together a little at a time, wet his hay that night: This will make the slime to come away in great slakes upon the dung; if, after this his stomach fail, then give him *White-wine*, *Honey* and *Cordial*.



## GLISTER.

*A Glister for the Colick, or any sickness or Gripings in the Guts or Belly.*

TAKE *Salt-water* or new-made *Brine*, two pints, dissolve therein a pretty quantity of *Soap*, and administer it glister-wise, blood-warm; this is avered to be the most excellent for the colick, or any sickness or griping in the guts.

~~~~~  
SICKNESS.

Of Sickness in Horses.

SICKNESSES in general are of two sorts, one offending the whole body, the other a particular member; the first of them not visible; the other apparent, and known by its own demonstrations. Of the first then, which offends the whole body, as fevers of all sorts, the quotidian, tertian, quartan and hectic, fevers pestilential, fevers accidental, or the general plague, are known by these signs: Much trembling, panting, sweating, and sallow countenance, hot breath, faintness in labor, decay in stomach, costiveness in the body; any or all of which when you perceive, first let the horse blood, and then give him *Treacle*: take of *Celandine* roots and leaves a good handful, as much of *Worm-wood*, as much of *Rue*, wash them well, and then stamp them in a mortar; which done, boil them in a quart of *Ale*, then strain them, and add to the liquor halt a pound of sweet *Butter*; then being luke-warm, give it to the horse to drink.

~~~~~  
STUB or THORN,—TO DRAW OUT A.

TAKE the herb *Ditany*, and bruise it in a mortar with black *Soap*, and lay it to the sore, and it will draw out the splint, iron or thorn.



## CRAMP.

*Of the general Cramp, or Convulsion of Sinews.*

CRAMPS are taken to be contracting or drawing together of sinews of any one member; but convulsions are, when the whole body, from the setting on of the head to the extreamest part, are generally contracted or stiffened. The cure of either, is first to chafe and rub the member contracted with *Vinegar* and common *Oil*, and then wrap it all over with wet *Hay*, or rotten *Litter*, or else with *Woolen Cloths*, either of which is a present remedy.

~~~~~  
HIDE-BOUND.

Of Hide-bound, or Consumption of the Flesh.

HIDE-BOUND, or consumption of the flesh proceedeth from unreasonable travel, disorderly diet, and many surfeits. It is known by a general dislike and leanness over the whole body, and by the sticking of the skin close to the body in such sort, that it will not rise from the body: the cure is, first to let the horse blood, and then to give him to drink, three or four mornings together, a quart of new *Milk*, with two spoonfuls of *Honey*, and one spoonful of course *Molasses*; let his food be either sodden *Barley*, warm *Grains* and *Salt*, or *Beans* split in a mill; his drink mashes.

~~~~~  
FOUNDERING,—OF THE BODY.

*Of Foundering in the Body.*

FOUNDERING in the body is of all surfeits the mortalest and soonest gotten; it proceedeth from intemperate riding an horse when he is fat, and then suddenly suffering him to take cold; and there is nothing sooner brings this infirmity, than washing a fat horse: the signs



are, sadness of countenance, staring hair, stiffness of limbs, and loss of belly: the cure is, only to give him wholesome *Meat*, and *Bread* of clean *Beans*, and warm drink, and for two or three mornings together, a quart of *Ale* brewed with *Pepper* and *Cinamon*, and a spoonful of *Molasses*.



### GALL & YELLOWS.

*Of the Diseases of the Gall, and especially of the Yellows.*

FROM the overflowing of the gall, which is the vessel of choler, spring many mortal diseases, especially the yellows, which is an extreme faint mortal sickness, if he be not prevented in time: the signs are, yellowness of the eyes and skin, and chiefly underneath his upper lip next to his fore-teeth, a sudden and faint falling down by the highway, or in the stable, and an universal sweat over all his body: the cure is, first to let the horse blood in the neck or mouth, or under the eyes; then take two penny-worth of *Saffron*, which being dried and made into fine powder, mix it with sweet *Butter*, and in manner of a pill, give it in balls to the horse three mornings together; let his drink be warm, and his hay sprinkled with water.



### SPLEEN.

*Of the Sickness of the Spleen.*

THE spleen, which is the vessel of melancholy, when it is over-charged therewith, groweth painful, hard and great, in such sort, that sometimes it is visible: the signs are much groaning, hasty feeding, and a continual looking to the left side only. The cure is, take *Agrimony*, and boil a good quantity thereof in



the water the horse shall drink, and chopping the leaves small, mix them with sweet *Butter*, and give the horse two or three round balls thereof in the manner of pills.

~~~~~  
BELLY-ACHE.

Of the Colick, Belly-ache, or Belly-bound.

THE colick or belly-ache, is a fretting, knowing or swelling of the belly or great bag, proceeding from windy humors, or from eating of green corn or pulse, hot grains without salt or labor, or bread-dough baked: and belly-bound is when a horse cannot dung. The cure of the colick, or belly-ache is, to take good store of the herb *Dill*, and boil it in his water that you give the horse to drink: but if he cannot dung, then you shall boil in the water good store of the herb *Fumitory*; and it will make him dung without danger of hurting.

~~~~~  
**EYE-DISEASES.**

*Of the Diseases in the Eyes, as watery Eyes, Blood-shotten Eyes, Dim-Eyes, Moon-Eyes, Strokes on the Eyes, Warts in the Eyes, Inflammation in the Eyes, Pearl, Pin or Web, or Haw in the Eye.*

UNTO the eye belongeth many diseases, all which have their true signs, and their names; and as touching that which is watery, blood-shotten, dim, moon-stricken or inflamed, they have all one cure: which is, to take *Wormwood*, beat it in a mortar with the *Gall* of a bull, strain it and anoint the horse's eye therewith, and it is an approved remedy: but for a wart, pearl, pin or web, which are evils growing in or upon the eyes: to take them off, take the juice of herb *Betony*, and wash his eyes therewith, and it will waste them away: for the haw, every smith can cut it out.



## GENERAL DISEASES.

*Of the Imposthume in the Ear, Poll-evil, Fistula, Swelling after blood-letting, any Galled back, Canker in the Withers, Setfast, Wens, Navel-gall, or any hollow Ulcer.*

THESE diseases are so apparent and common, that they need no other description but their names: and the most certain cure is, to take *Clay* of a mud or loam wall, straws and all, and boil it in strong *Vinegar*, and apply it plaisterwise to the sore, and it will of its own nature search to the bottom and heal it, provided that if you see any dead or proud flesh arise, you eat or cut it away.

~~~~~  
VIVES,—FOR THE.

FOR the vives, which is an inflammation of the kernels between the chap and the neck of the horse, take a penny-worth of *Pepper*, *Swine's-grease* a spoonful, the juice of a handful of *Rue*, *Vinegar* two spoonfuls: mix them together, and then put it equally into both the horse's ears, then tie them up with two flat laces, shut the ears that the medicine may go down; which done, let the horse blood in the neck and in the temple-veins, and it is a certain cure.

~~~~~  
CANKER.

*Of the Canker in the Nose, or any other part of the Body.*

TO heal any canker in what part soever it be; take the juice of *Plantain*, as much *Vinegar*, and the same weight of the powder of *Allum*, and with it anoint the sore twice or thrice a day, and it will kill it, and cure it.



## BLOOD,—TO STOP.

*Of Stanching of blood, whether it be at the Nose,  
or proceeding from any Wound.*

IF your horse bleed violently at the nose, and you cannot stop it, then you shall take *Betony*, and stamp it in a mortar with *Salt*, and put it into the horse's nose, or apply it to the wound, and it will stanch it; but if he be suddenly taken in riding by the high-way, or otherwise, and you cannot get this herb, you shall then take any *Woolen-cloth*, or any *Felt-hat*, and with a knife scrape a fine *Lint* from it, and apply it to the place bleeding, and it will stop.

## TEETH,—PAINS IN THE.

*Of pain in the Teeth, or loose Teeth.*

FOR any pain in the teeth, take *Betony*, and seeth it in *Ale* or *Vinegar* till half be consumed, and wash all the gums therewith; but if they be loose, then only rub them with the leaves of *Emulacampana*, or *Horse-holm*, and it will fasten them.

## MOUTH,—DISEASES IN THE.

*Of Diseases in the Mouth, as Blood-rifts, Liggs, Lampras, Camery, Inflammation, Tongue-burnt, or the Barbes.*

IF you find any infirmity in the horse's mouth, as the bloody-rifts, which are chaps or rifts in the palate of the horse's mouth; the liggs, which are little pustulas, or bladders within the horse's lips; the lampras, which is an excrescence of flesh above the teeth; the camery, which are little warts in the roof of the mouth; Inflammation, which is little blisters; barbes, which are two little paps under the tongue; or



any hurt on the tongue by the bit or otherwise; you shall take the leaves of *Worm-wood*, and the leaves of *Surewort*, and beat them in a mortar, with a little *Honey*, and with it anoint the sores, and it will heal them. As for the lampra's, they must be burned.

~~~~~  
FOUNDERING,—OF THE FEET.

Of Foundering in the Feet.

THERE be two sorts of foundering, a dry and a wet, the dry is incurable, the wet is thus to be cured and helped; first, pare all the soles of his feet, so thin, that you may see the quick; then let him bleed at every toe, and let him bleed well; then stop the vein with *Tallow* and *Rosin*; and having tacked on hollow shoes on his feet, stop them with *Bran*, *Tar* and *Tallow*, as boiling hot as may be, and renew it once in two days for a week together: then exercise him much, and his feet will come to their true use and nimbleness.

~~~~~  
**WIND-GAULS,—OF.**

THESE are little blebs, or small soft swellings on each side the fetlock, procured by much travel on hard and stony ways: the cure is, to prick them and let out the jelly, and then dry the sore with a plaister of *Pitch*.

~~~~~  
WOUND.

A perfect Drier of a green Wound, or any other Sore.

TAKE *Soap* and unslacked *Lime*, and mix them well together; but before you lay it to, wash the wound or sore with a little white *Wine-vinegar*, and then apply it. Proved.

A *Marrow-bone* burnt and made into powder and strewed on a sore or wound, is a great drier.

ANBURY.

For any Anbury.

TAKE a hot *Iron* and make it very sharp; and take the anbury in your hand, and sear it off to the bottom with a red hot *Iron*: Then mix a little beaten *Verdigrease* and *Train-oil* together; heat them, and anoint the place once a day till it be whole. Proved.



FLAPS,—IN THE MOUTH.

For the Flaps in any Horse's mouth.

TO know this, you shall perceive his lips to be swelled on both sides of his mouth, and that which is in the blisters is like the white of an egg; you must cut some slashes in it with a knife, then rub it once with *Salt*, and it is cured. Proved.



WOUND.

A rare Green Ointment to heal any Wound, old or new, quickly.

TAKE a handful of *Water-betony*, as much of *Comfry*, of *Mugwort*, red *Sage*, *Sage of Bethlehem*, by some called *Jerusalem-sage*, of *Southern-wood*, of *Rue*, by some called herb of *Grace*, of *Rosemary*, of each of these an handful; boil all these in a pint of *May Butter*, and as much *Mutton-suet*; and when it hath boiled a while, take it off the fire and strain it through a cloth, and put it into a pot for your use. This ointment will last good a year. Proved.

N. B. Before you lay this ointment on, wash the wound first with the water following:

A Water to cure any old or Green Wound, in Man or Beast.

TAKE half a pound of *Bole-armoniack*, a

quarter of a pound of white *Copperas*, two ounces of *Roch-allum*; beat 'your roch-allum and copperas small, and put them into a pipkin, and melt them together, and when they are cold, put them with the bole-armoniack into a mortar, and beat them all together to a fine powder: then take a pottle of running *Spring-water*, where the spring boils with a blue sand at the bottom, if possible, rather than in any other spring; set this pottle of spring-water on the fire with a close skillet, till it be scalding hot, and then put it into a clean earthen pitcher, and put two spoonfuls of this powder into the water, and stir it up well together, before you let it stand to settle; and when the water hath stood two or three days settling, then skim off the uppermost froth, put the water into another pitcher clean from the dregs, and afterwards use it when you have occasion: but when you use it either for man or beast, warm the water as hot as can be endured either by man or beast: when you wash any wound, of a man, let the cloth lye a while wet upon the wound, and wet a double cloth in the same water, and bind it on plaister-wise, renewing it two or three times a day: for any wound, old or new, always wash it first with this water, and then apply the green ointment to it afterwards. Proved.



FILM,—ON THE EYE.

To take a Film off an Horse's Eye.

YOU must take as much of *Dialthæa* as the bigness of a walnut, and put to it the powder of *Verdigrease* as much as an hazel-nut: mix them well together, then every day put into his eye as much of it as the bigness of a pea: this will take off any film whatsoever. Proved.

HUMORS,—TO KEEP BACK.

A medicine to defend and keep back Humors from a Wound, so that it may heal the sooner.

TAKE two pints of *Tartar*, or the dregs of white *Wine-vinegar*, but the tartar is better; and put in as much *Bolearmoniack* as the bigness of an egg; an handful of white or bay *Salt*, and an handful of great *Bur-dock* leaves, or the roots: wash the swelled place, and round about the swelling with this once a day; this will hasten the cure very much, if you do so wash it with this, and apply to the wound your healing salves or ointment, as you may in this book be furnished with store of them for that purpose.

Proved.

~~~~~  
FARCION.

*A rare receipt for a Farcion.*

TAKE *Mullin*, by some called *Higtaper*; it hath a great woolly leaf, it groweth close by the ground upon the banks of ditches, or in the high-ways side; *Chickweed*, *Groundsel*, and *Wood-betony*, of each an handful, cut them small, and boil them all in a quart of *Ale*, and when it is blood-warm put in two penny-worth of *Quick-silver*, and give it him to drink fasting. The third day after, give him the like proportion, warm water all the while to drink, and to stand in.

Proved.

~~~~~  
FUNDAMENT,—FALLEN OUT.

For a Horse that hath his Fundament fallen out; or for a Cow that hath the Mother fallen out.

TAKE an armful of *Willow-boughs*, and dry them on a hot hearth; when they are dry,

sweep the hearth as clean as you can, and set them on fire, and burn them to ashes; then take the ashes and searce them through a fine boulder, and before you strew on the powder of the ashes, wash the fundament with warm *Water*, to make it as warm as the body; then strew on the finest of the *Ashes*, and put the fundament up into its place; then tye a line to the horse's tail, and bring it between his hinder-legs, and fasten it to a sursingle under his belly pretty strait; using this means, his fundament will be kept up, and in a very short time it will be knit firm and strong again. If the mother of a cow come forth, use but the aforesaid means, and you will find it a perfect remedy.

Both Proved.

White *Pepper* beaten finely and searced through a fine searce, the fundament being well warmed with warm *Water* or *Milk*, and after warmed with a warm cloth, and then this beaten pepper strewed upon it, and so put up, and his tail tied close between his legs, as before, you will find it very good.

A *Marrow-bone* of a bullock burnt in the fire, and beaten to fine powder, is, for a wound, a great and good drier and healer, and will skin a wound.

Proved.

The inward and outward bark of a *Willow-tree*, first dried, and afterwards the hearth being swept very clean, burnt to ashes, and the ashes sifted through a fine boulder: the finest of these ashes is good to dry up any sore; nothing like it. These ashes are likewise a great binder for a looseness in horses or cows bodies.

Proved.

LICE.

To kill Lice of Horses and Cows.

TAKE a quantity of *Hog's-grease*, and anoint the horse underneath the mane, and upon the ridgebone of the back; it will burst them all presently.



WOUND,—TO CLEANSE ANY.

TAKE the roots of *Elder*, and beat them to powder, and boil them with *English-honey*: it is good to cleanse any sore, old or new. But take this for a general observation, that before you dress any wound, let it be where it will about the horse, wash it clean first with white *Wine-vinegar*, and then dress it with your salve. Proved.



SLEEPING-EVIL.

For the Sleeping Evil.

THE signs to know it are: the horse will stand sleeping in a corner continually, with his head hanging down to the ground; it takes away his memory. The cure is to be performed thus: Let him bleed on both sides the neck in the morning, fasting, before he drink; let him bleed also in the mouth, in the third furrow in the roof of his mouth; and after he hath bled well, give him this drink: take of *Camomile* and *Mother-wort*, together three handfuls, cut small, and boil them in two quarts of running *Water* half an hour, and then give the horse a pint once in two days fasting; the third day give him the rest fasting, and three or four hours after give him warm *Water*, and a little comfortable *Mash*, made of ground *Mault*, put into scalding hot water after it comes off the

fire: keep him in the house warm the time of the cure, and fume his head as you do for the staggers, and this in a short time is a perfect cure.

Proved.

FALLING-EVIL.

For the Falling-Evil in an Horse.

THE falling evil will cause him suddenly to fall down, and to lye sprauling with his heels, and foaming at the mouth, like a man that hath the falling-sickness; you shall know whether he be subject to fall often, by feeling him by the gristles of his nose, which will be cold if he be subject to it. The cure is, to let him blood on both sides of his neck; after he hath bled, in the morning before he drink, give him this drink: take *Miseltoe* that groweth upon an apple-tree, the leaves are like ivy-leaves; dry it and rub it to powder, and use it at your leisure: give him of this powder of miseltoe one spoonful in half a pint of *Sack*, and keep him in the house till he be well, and give him to drink water blood-warm.

Proved.

N. B. You may add to the miseltoe three drams of the electuary, called *Theriaca Diatessaron*, or the *Oil of Pepper*, one dram, or a dram and an half.



COUGH.

For a Cough old or new, or the heaving of his Lungs.

TAKE the root of *Gentian*, which you shall have at the apothecaries; slice it, dry it, and beat it to powder, give the beast as much of this powder as will lye upon a shilling, in half a pint of his own *Water*; give this to him fasting once in three days, and so continue every third day, till you see his cough and heaving

to abate or be quite gone: the cold of his water must be just taken off, and he must stand in all the time of the cure. This for an old cough or heaving of the lungs, is the best cure in the world. Proved.

GLISTERS.

Of Glisters, and their Use.

A GLISTER is given as a preparative to a purging drink; and a Glister by cleansing the guts refresheth the vital parts, and prepareth the way before; wherefore I advise every FARRIER, before he give a drink, whether purging or otherwise, if the horse be not at that time loose in body, that after blood-letting, the next day he give a Glister: this done, he may the better give what is requisite; otherwise if he give the drink before the Glister, he may stir and provoke the evil humors, which by reason of much costiveness and wind, and other impediments in his guts, to attempt to make their passage by a contrary way, which cannot be done without great hazard to the beast. I therefore advise if the beast be costive and bound in his body, to give a Suppository or Glister first, then this purging drink.

What a Decoction is.

A DECOCTION is a broth made of divers Herbs, as *Mallows*, *Marsh-mallows*, *Pellitory*, *Camomile*, and sometimes white *Lilly-roots*, or such like things, which we do boil in water to a third part; and sometimes instead of herbs and water, we take the fat of *Beef-broth*, or the broth of *Sheeps-heads*, *Milk*, or *Whey*.

What quantity of Broth or Decoction is put in to make a Glister.

FOR the quantity, we do administer according to the age, strength or greatness of the horse ; for if he be of a strong and able body, of large growth and stature, fat and lusty, in this case we put in three pints ; but if he be of a small growth, weak, sick, feeble or lean, in this case a quart is enough ; we often put in half a pint of Oil, of Salt two or three drahms, and sometimes we put in *Verjuice*, and sometimes *Honey*, as we see cause. Drugs we use, as *Sena*, *Cassia*, *Agarick*, *Anniseeds*, *Oil of Dill*, *Oil of Camomile*, *Oil of Violets*, *Sugar-candy*, and such like.

For the quantity of Drugs put into a Glister.

FOR the quantity of drugs, you ought not to exceed the quantity of three ounces in one glister at the most, neither put in above four ounces of *Butter*, and let it be but blood-warm when you administer it.

What time is fit for an Horse to keep his Glister.

WHEN you give it him, let him be empty, and before he do receive it, rake him : After you have given it him, let him keep it half an hour, it will do it the more good ; the longer he keep it the more good it will do him : Hold his tail close to his fundament all the while.

The length of the Glister pipe.

THE best instrument wherein to give a horse a glister, is a pipe made on purpose, which ought to be twelve inches in the shank, which must also be put home : And when the glister

is put into his body, then draw away the pipe by degrees, not all at once.

~~~~~  
GLISTER.

*A Glister for a Horse that is bound in his Body and cannot dung.*

TAKE the fat of *Beef-broth* (if he be sick, weak and lean) a pint and a half is enough ; if he be big, fat and lusty, you may put in two or three pints ; put to it half a pint of *English Honey*, and two drahms of *White Salt* ; mix them well together, and administer it glister wise blood-warm ; then clap his tail close to his towel for half an hour or longer, and then if it do not work, as I am confident it will, ride him up and down a gentle trot for half an hour more, but not till he sweat : then set him up warm clothed and littered, and let him stand upon the bit four or five hours, in which time he will purge kindly : then unbit him, and give him sweet hay, and an hour after that, give him *White-water*, and he may drink any cold water in a day or two after ; and this is the best cure for this malady. This glister will open and loosen the body, bring away all offensive humors, remove all obstructions ingendered in the body by means of excessive heat ; it cleanseth the guts, and purgeth away all slimy substance. And this you will find to be the best remedy for a horse that is costive and bound in his body, and that cannot dung. Proved.

~~~~~  
For another Glister.

TAKE two handfuls of *Melilot*, two handfuls of *Pellitory* ; if you can get neither of them, then take two handfuls of *Camomile*, but *Pelli-*

tory is the best if it can be gotten; boil any one of these in a decoction of water to a third part, then add to it of *Sallad-oil* and of *Virjuice* of of each half a pint, *Honey* four ounces, of *Cassia* two ounces, mix all these together, and administer it blood-warm, and order him as in the first glister. It will open the guts and body very well, and will take from him all hurtful and offensive humors. It will carry away all spungy matter. It will allay the biliousness and sharpness of humors, cleanse inward ulcers, and much refresh and comfort the vital spirits: But if you find by giving too great a quantity, your horse purgeth and scoweth longer, or more violently than you think is meet and good, or for fear it should stir up in him more bad humors all of a sudden, then you may easily allay it with this following glister.

GLISTER.

A Glister restraining, to stop Loosness.

TAKE of the decoction in the glister aforegoing a pint, and put thereto as much *Cow's Milk* as it cometh warm from the cow, and put also thereto the *Yolks* of three new laid *Eggs*, well beaten and mixed together, and give it blood-warm: This glister is only to be given an horse that is very laxative, or doth empty himself too much, which is occasioned oft-times by over much debility or want of strength, or when nature is very much offended: You may give this glister as often as need shall require, and till you see his loosness stop.

GLISTER.

A Glister for a fat fowl bodied Horse, that is newly taken from Grass, or for any surfeited diseased Horse.

TAKE three handfuls of *Marsh-mallow roots* cleansed and bruised, *Violet-leavs* of each two handfuls, *Flax-seed* three spoonfuls, the cloves of *White Lilly-roots* a small handful; boil all these together in fair water, from a gallon to a wine quart; then strain it, and put thereto one ounce of *Sena*, which must be steeped in the liquor three hours standing upon the fire; then put thereto half a pint of *Sallad-oil*, and being blood-warm administer it glister-wise, causing them to keep it above half an hour: And the best time to give this, is three or four days before the full or change of the moon, yet it may be given with much benefit at any other time. This glister purgeth the guts abundantly and it is chiefly to be given an horse that is newly taken from grass.



GLISTER.

A Glister for Melancholy.

TAKE of *Whey* a quart, of *Anniseeds* in fine powder two penny-worth, the leaves of *Mallows* two handfuls; boil all these together till the *Mallows* be soft, then strain it, and put thereto of sweet *Butter* four ounces, and when the butter is melted, give it glister-wise blood-worm. This purgeth melancholy, it causeth a good appetite which before was wanting; it refresheth the dulled spirits, and causeth a good digestion, if the horse be kept warm and well attended.

GLISTER.

A Glister, to be given in case of a desperate sickness : It helpeth Fevers ; is good against the Pestilence and all languishing diseases, most excellent against surfeits either by provender or otherwise : and will give great strength in a short time, if it be rightly made and carefully given.

TAKE of the *Oil of Dill*, *Oil of Camomile*, *Oil of Violets*, and *Cassia*, of each half an ounce, of brown *Sugar-candy* in powder three ounces : Then take of *Mallow-leaves* a handful, and boil them first to a decoction in fair water, then strain it, and put thereto the before-named ingredients, and give it blood-warm : This is most sovereign to be given in case of a desperate sickness, and for all the diseases aforementioned.

GLISTER.

A Glister for the Pestilence, and all Fevers.

TAKE half an ounce of the pulp of *Coloquintida*, the seeds and rind taken away ; of *Gum-dragant* three quarters of an ounce ; boil all these in three quarts of water to a quart, with *Centory* and *Wormwood* of each half an handful, and a quarter of an ounce of *Castorium* ; strain it and dissolve it into the decoction of *Gerologundium* three ounces, and of white *Salt* three drahms, and of *Sallad-oil* half a pint, and then administer it glistes-wise, blood-warm ; this hath been often proved to be most excellent good for the diseasef above-mentioned.



GLISTER.

A Lenitive Glister.

TAKE the decoction of *Mallows*, and put to it

either of fresh *Butter* four ounces, or of *Sallad-oil* half a pint, and give it glister-wise, blood-warm ; this is the gentlest glister of any before prescribed, for it is both a loosener and a great cooler of the body, and doth infinitely ease pain. Also it is good for convulsions or cramps, and most singular against costiveness, proceeding from any sickness or surfeit by provender or foundering in the body.

~~~~~

### BRITTLE HOOFS.

ANOINT them with an equal proportion of *Dog's-grease*, *Turpentine*, and *Tar*, all boiled together a little while, and it will make them grow strong and tough ; put in the *Turpentine* but a little before you take it off the fire. Prov.

~~~~~

RING-BONE.

A RING-BONE grows just upon the instep, as we used to say, upon the fore part of the hinder leg, just about the hoof, in a hard knob as big as a walnut : First, The beast must be cast, or else you must tie up his contrary leg with a strong rope, till you strike four or five holes in the ring-bone, at the very edge of it. Let every hole be an equal distance from other : then take white *Mercury* or *Arsenic* beaten to powder, as much as will lay upon your flume, and put it into one hole, and as much likewise in the same manner in every hole, binding it on for twenty-four hours.

~~~~~

### FOR THE SAME.

TAKE quick and unslaked *Lime*, newly taken from the kiln, which must be well burned, and the best burned you may know by its lightness,



make your lime into fine powder, and lay it upon the place swelled all along of a good thickness, and bind upon it a linen cloth made fast about the foot, and so put the horse into the water a pretty while ; then take him forth and unbind his foot, and he is infallibly cured.

For the burning of the lime in the water does kill the Ring-bone even unto the root thereof: with this receipt I have cured more than an hundred horses. But when you are thus to dress your horse, let him be brought close to the water wherein he is to be ridden, that so soon as you have applyed the lime unto the Ring-bone, you may presently put him into the water. Proved.

~~~~~

BITE, BLOW, or FILM.

For a Bite, Blow, or Film in the Eye.

TAKE as much white *Copperas* as the bigness of half a walnut, and beat it very fine, the same quantity of *Verdegrease* beaten to powder : Bray these two well together upon an iron spade, or in a mortar, then mix them with as much fresh *Butter* as a walnut ; put into the eye as much of this as the bigness of a pea once a day, until it be well and clear. Proved.

~~~~~

### FOR THE SAME.

*A precious Ointment for an Horse's Eye, either for Bite, Blow, or Film.*

GO to the Apothecary's, and buy the stone called *Lapis Calaminaris*, it is of a blue colour, heat it red hot, then take it out and quench it presently in a pint and a half of *White-wine*, and so heat it and quench it as before, twelve times one after another ; then add unto the wine half



so much of the *Juice of Housleek*, well stamped and strained, and stir them up well together: dip a feather in this water, and dress it two or three times a day, till the sight be recovered.

Proved.

~~~~~  
STRANGLES.

For a Strangling in the Spring.

TAKE a handful of *Elder-buds*, as much of dried *Wormwood*, half a handful of *Mercury*, as much of *Tansey*: cut these small and boil them in a pint of strong *Beer*, and it will serve for three drinks, three days distance between drink and drink. Give it him fasting in mornings, give a mash three hours after, warm water for a day or two: let him stand in all the while. If he be swelled between the jaws, anoint it with *Bacon-grease* once in two or three days, till it be rotted, and then let it out, and heal it with your healing salves.

Proved.

~~~~~  
BRUISE,—AN INWARD.

*For an inward Bruise with any Fume or Stuv.*

TAKE a pint and a half of strong *Beer*, and one ounce of *Bole-armoniac*, and boil them a little together, and give it him with a horn blood-warm. It is very good for an inward bruise of a horse. The greasy sort is best.

Proved.

~~~~~  
BROKEN-WIND.

For a broken winded Horse.

TAKE *Boar's dung* and dry it to powder, and put a spoonful of it into two pints of *Milk* as it comes from the cow, or otherwise heated blood-warm, and give it him. If you see that this

proportion will not make him sick the first time you give it, then give him two spoonfuls more of the powder, and in four or five times giving, it will perfectly cure. This drink must be given every third day. A spoonful of the powder of a *Hedge-hog* (by some called an *Urchin*) doth infinitely help in this case. Proved.



COLD.

For a Cold in a Beast either in Winter or Summer.

TAKE an egg-shell full of *Tar*, half an ounce of *Red-stone Sugar*, half an ounce of *Annisecds* beaten small, half an ounce of *Tobacco* beaten, half an ounce of *Liquorish* beaten very small, two ounces of *Brimstone* beaten small, a quarter of a handful of *Rue*, cut small; after that these things are thus beaten and stirred up together, make them up in three balls of a like bigness, then put two pints of strong *Beer* blood-warm; and the first hornful of *Beer* you give him put a ball into it; and do so likewise to the second and third: and then give him the remainder of the beer. Let him not drink for four or five hours after: give him a mash, and afterwards hay to eat; let him stand in for three or four nights if it be in *Summer*, after the first day's giving; work him every day moderately, and the beast will thrive the better. If once will not take away his cough, and cause him to belly, give him another; keep him warm, and it is a cure. Proved.



SCRATCHES.

THEY are upon the after-heels of a Horse in the Pastern and above. For remedy, take two

penny-worth of black *Soap*, as much as an egg of the newest *Hen's-dung* as you can get, *Oyster-shells* put into hot embers five or six; they must be put in over night, and raked up so, that they may be well dried by the morning; then beat them to powder, and bray them all together like an ointment, and apply it to the horse's sore heels every morning and evening; the horse must not come into the water till you see he is cured. Always rub his heels very clean before you rub in the ointment, and you shall find it a certain cure in two or three times dressing.

FOR THE SAME.

OVER night let his heels and legs be bathed well in *Beef-broth*; the next morning rub his legs clean, and then apply this ointment to heal it: Take two penny-worth of *Gilts-grease*, two penny-worth of *Speck-oil*, at the currier's, made of shreds and cuttings of leather, two penny-worth of *Verdegrease* beaten small, two penny-worth of *Train-oil*: put all these into a pipkin, and set it on the coals to melt, but stir them till they be melted; then once a day anoint him with this ointment, till his heels be well, which will be whole very suddenly: Chafe it and rub it in with your hand very well, let him come in no water nor dirt till he be whole: When horses have been so swelled, crannied and stiff, that they could not go, but fall down, this hath cured them.

FOR THE SAME.

IF at any time a horse's leg swell, but especially in the month of *March*, ride him into a river where the water runs swift, up to the mid-leg, and there let him stand not above a quarter of

an hour ; then when you set him up in the stable, take a wisp and a pail of water, and dash the water against his legs, till they be clean. This is a cure for swelled legs in a very short time, that is, when they are not broken out, but only swelled. Proved.

~~~~~

### STAGGERS,—FOR THE MAD.

THE signs of this disease are : He will foam at the mouth white, and will seem dull-headed, and will have at that time a blue film over his eyes, and will wander much up and down : be sure to let him blood on both his neck-veins, within one or two days after he complains, and in the third furrow in the palate of his mouth, with the point of a Cornet-horn : You may run an awl into the gristles of his nose, something above his nostrils ; the bleeding at the mouth and the nose will ease the pain in his head. The cure is, Take a handful of *Rue*, by some called *Herb-grass*, three cloves of *Garlick*, a spoonful of *Salt*, a spoonful of *Vinegar*, and two spoonfuls of *Aqua vitæ* ; bruise all these together well, and then put the one half into one ear, and the other half into the other ear, with a little wool after it ; put the liquor in with a spoon first, and then the herbs, and then the wool ; and then tie or stitch with a needle and thread the ears up very fast with two listing garters ; then presently fume him at the nostrils through a funnel with the stalks and peelings of *Garlick*, beaten in a mortar with *Mastick* and *Frankincense* mixed together ; of these make pellets as big as a bullet, and lay them upon a chafing-dish of fresh coals, and the smoke will go up through the funnel into the head, and much



comfort and cleanse the brain ; fume his head three times a day till you see him mend : At the same time beat *Redweed-seed*, which grows in Winter-corn, by some called *Poppy-seed*, very small, and give as much of the powder at each nostril as will lay upon a six-pence, in two half hornfuls of any beer, do this every morning : Or thus, if you cannot get *Poppy-seed*, then give him white *Poppy-water*, which you may likewise have at the Apothecary's, and give at each nostril a spoonful and a half at each time : it will make him sleep so soundly, that you may walk upon him from the head to the tail, and he will not stir ; he will lay as if he were dead for a time ; his sleeping will mightily refresh him : After you have given it unto him, you will see him, before he falls down, to buckle and sally, till at last he will tumble down. Let him stand in a dark room and warm, where he may see no light ; let him have bursten oats, and mashes of ground malt ; let his drink be cold water : that which you put in his ears, must remain there twenty-four hours and no longer : Put wool, flax, lint, or a rag after it ; stitching is better than a garter, for that will make the hair come white. Proved a rare cure.



#### FARCION,—FOR THE WATER.

IT will come by the horse's feeding upon low watry ground, and in pits where the grass grows above the water, for there he will lick the water up as well as the grass : this kind of feeding will cause horses sometimes to swell mightily under the belly and chaps : To cure it, cause a Smith to make an iron like a fleam at a nail's-rod end, then heat it red-hot, and strike it easily but just through the skin in many places upon



the swelling, and no where else, and you shall see abundance of yellow, grey oily water come out pouring: this being done, wash it with chamber-lie and salt, as hot as you can endure your hand in it, wash it but three or four times, and it is a certain cure. If the swelling be very big, mix with the chamber-lie and salt as much *Bole-armoniac* as a walnut; boil them together, and wash it. Proved.



### IVES,—FOR THE.

YOU may see them grow in a roll betwixt the hinder part of his jaw-bone and his neck; if they get to the roots of his ears, there is great danger: The cure is, Let blood in both the neck-veins, then take two spoonfuls of *Pepper*, as much *Hog's-grease*, and as much *Vinegar*, and work them up together, and put them one half into one ear, and the other into the other ear, and wool, flax, lint, or rags, which you have at hand, after it, and stitch up his ears close with a needle and thread for twenty-four hours, and it is a certain cure. Proved.

In the time of the cure, let him stand in the house; give it him fasting, any water cold or warm, any meat, only let him stand in the house three or four days after it.



### CANKER.

*For a Canker in the Tongue.*

YOU shall see his mouth and tongue raw within; you shall know it by his stinking breath and his roping slavering; which to cure, take as much *Roch-Allum* as an egg-shell contains, boil it in three or four spoonfuls of white *Wine Vinegar*, with a spoonful of *English Honey*, and



an handful of *Columbine leaves* cut small : wash his tongue once a day till it be whole : it will be cured in two or three times dressing. You may tie a rag on a stick and wash his mouth.

Proved.



### VEIN.

*Swelled upon letting Blood.*

AS when the wind gets in it will do ; or when a fleam miscarries it will do the like. For the cure of which take white *Pitch*, black *Pitch*, and *Rosin*, of each a like quantity ; boil them together, and lay it on hot with a flat stick, and then flock it ; and this doing once in four or five days, will take down the swelling : do it all over the swelling ; if once will not do, do it oftener : he must stand in with dry meat the time of the Cure. You may anoint it with the *Oil of Populeon*, or apply *Soap and Brandy*.

Proved.



### BLOOD-PISSING.

*For a Horse that pisses Blood.*

TAKE of *Tarragon* a spoonful, and steep it in white *Wine*, and as much *Poppy* seed, beaten, as will lie on a shilling : give this in the white wine, and it is a certain cure. Give this fasting.

Proved.



### MULES,—FOR THE.

YOU shall know this by the staring of the hair, above the fore part of his hoof on his after-leg, and by the dew that stands on his feet above the hoof. For the cure : Take *Linseed-oil* and black *Soap*, of each a like quantity, boil them together, and before you anoint his



sore at any time, wash it clean, and dry it, and then anoint it with the aforesaid salve, and it will cure. Proved.

~~~~~  
SWELLING.

To take down any swelling, being new, whether it be broke or not broke.

TAKE two pints of red *Wine-Vinegar*, and boil it in four handfuls of *Foles-foot* leaves, not cut, but wrung to pieces with your hands. When it begins to boil, put in two handfuls of *Bay-salt*, and when the salt is melted in it, take it off the fire, and when you use it, heat it as hot as you can endure your hand in it, and with it anoint the place once a day till it be assuaged. This also is a very likely medicine, but by me not tried.

~~~~~  
HORSE-PESTILENCE,—RECEIPT TO  
CURE A.

TAKE of *Wormwood* a handful, of *Rue* a handful, of *Celandine* roots a handful, to be cut small; then put them into a quart of *Aloes-milk*, boil it to it comes to a pint, then strain it, and put to it half a pound of fresh *Butter*, then give it the horse in the morning fasting, pretty warm, and keep him from drinking two days; and if he does drink, let it be cold water; and if grass can be had, let him eat it.

~~~~~  
YELLOWs,—FOR THE.

YOU shall know this by his faint sweating at the roots of his ears, and the white of his eyes will be yellow, you must first let him blood in the neck-veins, or on both sides of the neck; then take *Elder-leaves*, *Celandine* and *Camomile*, of each a handful; cut them small, and give

them to the horse in a pint and a half of the best beer, being heated blood-warm, fasting. You may run your cornet-horn into the third roof in the palate of his mouth; keep him warm, and give him warm water to drink for a day or two, and this drench will certainly cure him. Proved.

STRAINS.

For a Horse that is Back-swankt, or for a Strain in the Kidneys, being over burthened in the hinder part, or in Race-running, or by being overstrained in the Back.

TAKE a fat hot sheep's Skin, just as it comes from the back of the sheep as soon as it is killed; mix four penny worth of *Nerve-oil*, and four penny worth of *Turpentine* well together, and besmear or anoint the sheep's skin all over, and clap it to the place of the back where the grief lies, which commonly is in the navel-place of the back-bone. In that part of the back-bone is a horse mostly swanked. When you have thus laid it along his back-bone, make a crupper to go under his tail to keep it on, and a breast-plate before, and fasten them together, to girt it upon him for a month till his back be knit and strengthened. Proved.

CANKER.

For a Canker in the Head.

A CANKER is a disease in the head, and sometimes will set upon the eyes, and sometimes in the nostrils: you shall know it by his rawness, and it will run a yellow water. For remedy, take half a pint of *Sallad-oil*, one ounce of the oil of *Turpentine*, three ounces of *Burgundy Pitch*, and one penny worth of *Verde-*

grease beaten fine ; put all but the verdegrease into a pipkin, and let them boil together a pretty while : then take it off the fire, and put in the verdegrease, and let them all boil together to a salve ; but if you have not a great care, the verdegrease will make all boil over ; to prevent which, always have another pipkin standing by in readiness, that if it boil over you may put some into that ; then put them together again, and set them upon warm embers, and let it gently boil till you see it come to a salve, being neither too hard nor too soft ; you must stir it all the while it boils, then take it off, and keep it for your use. If you use this medicine for a canker in the nostrils, first tie a rag about a stick's end, and dip it in some white *Wine Vinegar* and some *Salt*, and run it up his nostrils to do off all the scales. When you have washed it clean, take a feather, and if it be not long enough tie two together, and dip it in the cold salve, and run it up his nostrils but once a day. If it be a canker in the head, face or eyes, take a little tow, and rub the canker till it bleed, and when it leaveth bleeding, anoint it with a feather dipt in the aforesaid salve, and strew some wheat bran upon the salve ; it will hold on the better. Dress it once a day till you see it heal, and then once in two or three days, whilst it heals up. Observe this rule in all outward cures, for it is needful. Let him stand in all the time of the cure. Proved.

~~~~~  
SWELLING.

*For a blow or any other mischance, which causeth a swelling about the head, face, jaws, or chaps.*

FIRST, let blood in the neck-vein, on the side the head swells. If he swells on both



sides, let him bleed on both sides. Then give him this drink to prevent a farcy; take an ounce of *Turmeric*, and an ounce of *Anni-seeds*, of *Red-sage*, *Wormwood*, *Rue*, of all three but a handful; cut them small, and put all into a quart of strong beer, and give it the beast cold, for they are hot of themselves, fasting in a morning, and let him fast four or five hours after it; give him warm water to drink but for once. So soon as you have given him his drink, apply this charge hot with a flat stick, daub on the swelling a quarter of a pint of *aqua vitæ* or *Brandy-wine*, which is the spirit of *aqua vitæ*; but brandy is best mixed with a penny-worth of *Crown-soap*, according to the bigness or smallness of the swelling; make a quantity of these two things which you apply as a charge: this charge of these two things, will take down any swelling old or new whatsoever. Soak it in with a red hot iron; apply it but once, it will not come off in fourteen or fifteen days: it will sink it quite fast, or break it. Proved.

~~~~~  
NAVEL GALL,—FOR A.

TAKE *Brandy-wine* cold, and put it on with your hand, or with a rag: it will take it down in a few times dressing, if the skin be not broken. Proved.

~~~~~  
THROAT KERNELS.

*For hard Kernels under the Throat.*

MIX *Soap* and *Brandy-wine* together, and apply it to the kernels hot: then heat it in with a hot iron; it will either sink them flat, or break them. Proved.



## INFLAMMATION OR SWELLING.

*For a hot Inflammation or soft Swelling, that is new done, whether broken or not broken.*

ANOINT it with the *Oil of Populeon*, and rub it in cold with your hand once a day, or twice at the most, till it be down. Proved.

## BRUISED CODS.

*For a Bruise or Bite upon the Cods of an Horse, that cause them to swell much.*

FIRST, bathe them well in warm *Whey* or *Milk*, but whey is best: let it be as hot as the horse can endure it: bathe it for three or four days together; then make a bag to put his cods therein to keep them warm; anoint his cods with the *Oil of Populeon* cold, once or twice a day, till you see the swelling of his cods abate—which when you see, apply the charge of *Crown-soap* and *Brandy-wine*, to take down the rest of the swelling, and to knit the veins and strings of his cods again. Lay it on hot, and heat it well in; three or four days after ride him into a river, if you can, or pit, up to the belly, and you shall see it fall in a short time. If the cods be swelled much, and it have been long done, and is hard, then do not meddle with it. Proved.

## STRAIN.

*For an old Strain in the Shoulder.*

FIRST, tie up his sound leg with a list or garget, then walk or drive him on three legs, that he may lay the weight of his body upon the lame leg, till he begin to sweat at the ears and cods with pain; this is, because you may see the plaitvein the plainer appear; then let down



his lame leg, and you shall see the vein yet plainer than you could when his leg was tied up. If you cannot see the vein plain enough when his leg stands upon the ground, then heat but a little water and clap it on with your hand upon the vein, and then thou shall certainly see the vein appear a great deal bigger, that you may let it blood: then when you see the blood is come into the plait-vein, and that the vein is plain enough to see and feel, tie up his lame leg again, and let him bleed in the plait vein, on that side the bottom of his chest his lame leg is on: let him bleed a quart or two, or more. The greater the lameness is, the more let him bleed. After he hath bled about a quart upon the ground, presently put into a bowl a good handful of salt, and let him bleed a quart or more into that salt. You must stir the salt and blood all together, all the while he bleeds into the bowl, because it may not clot; then set the blood and salt by, and stop the plait-vein with a piece of lead, that may nip the mouth of the vein together again, that it may not bleed. You must have in readiness an ounce or an ounce and an half of the *Oil of Turpentine*, and as much strong *Beer*; put them both into a glass vial, and shake them well together. When you have thus shaken the oil and beer well together, bathe it well in with your hand about his breast, and all his shoulder over, and the bottom of his breast, between his legs, and half way down to his knees; bathe it and clap it well in with your hand; presently after, take the blood and salt, and bathe and clap that upon the former; then set him up into the stable to meat, and with a list or garter, tie both his fore legs together as close as you can: a girt or six-



single will serve to tie his legs. The next day untie his fore legs, take him out and walk him, and if you see he go any thing well, take him back and ride him gently a mile, and set him up again, and tie his fore feet again as close as you did before. If he go not well the first day, do but walk him the second day, and not ride him ; and the third day after his first dressing, do not only tie his legs, but flat a stick on both sides, in the fashion of a wedge, about the breadth of a sixpence ; take it and drive it in between the toes of his shoes, and the toe of his foot fast, so that it may not come out, and always whilst he stands still in the stable, tie his legs close, and peg him with a wedge ; and where you walk or ride him abroad, untie his legs and take out the wedge. Do this every night and day till he grow sound, which will be within two or three days, if it be a strain newly taken. To let blood once, and anoint it once with the *Oil of Turpentine* and *Beer*, and once with the blood and salt, is enough, with the help of tying his legs together, and driving in a wooden wedge, as you were before directed. For a wrench in the shoulder, or when a horse hath pulled his shoulder out of his place, and the shoulder is fallen the breadth of a man's hand or more, or if he be splayed on the shoulder, do nothing contrary to what you were directed before in this receipt, either for matter or manner ; for if it be but lately done, it is as speedy a cure for the one as for the other. And if you do as you are here directed, I am persuaded there is not a better or speedier way to be taken under the sun. I cannot give praises sufficient to the worth of it. Proved.



## POLL-EVIL.

*For a Poll-evil in the Head of an Horse.*

IF you take it at the first swelling, then do thus : Take half an ounce of the *Oil of Turpentine*, and anoint the swelling therewith, so far as it is swelled, and let it sink in and take its course for four or five days, in which time the skin will be shrunk up like a purse : at the four or five days end, if you see the swelling begin to fall, then take *Burgundy-pitch*, and *Black Pitch*, of each two ounces, and one ounce of *Mastick*, put them into a pipkin and melt them ; then take a flat stick and spread it all over the swelling ; then take the shearings of cloth or flocks, and do them thick on with your hand upon the pitch till it be hot : when your plaister comes off, which may be a fortnight or a month after, if then you see the oil and the plaister have killed the venom of it, and taken down the swelling, then do no more to it. Again, if you see, when your plaister comes off, that it is much swelled, or that there be proud flesh in it, then, if it be not broken, lance it, and if there be any dead or proud flesh in it cut it out ; then fill the hole or wound with fine tow, flax or hards, to dry the blood up, and there let it be five or six hours, then take it away, and put in some of the medicine which you use for a canker in the head, face or eyes, or nostrils of a horse. With this medicine dress it once a day at first, and as it begins to heal, dress it once in two days ; this medicine will heal it suddenly. Cut a hole at the edge or lower part of the swelling, to lay it a draining, and it will heal a great deal sooner. Daub and throw on a good store of wheat bran upon it when you lay it on ; when



your plaister comes off, look upon the top of the poll-evil, to see how far the dead, proud, white, jelly flesh goes; cut it all out with your incision-knife, till you come at the red flesh which is sound: the veins will bleed much, and spin again when you come at the quick; but let not that hinder you from cutting out all the dead proud flesh, which if you cut all out clean, you cannot do amiss, only take heed you do not cut the white pax-wax, which runs along the top of the neck, which some call a cress. it is white, and you may easily see it; if you cut that, his neck will fall, and look basely, therefore have a care. There is a white pith in a poll-evil near the top of the neck by the pax-wax; take your nippers and pull it out, it will come out like a plug; there is no such thing in a fistula: when you have pulled it out put some of your medicine to it, and it will heal it apace. Let not the dead flesh be left in the wound, but cut it clean out, although the wound seem never so broad. The same cure and the same way is to be used for a fistula. The beast must stand in the time of the cure.

Proved.



#### MALENDER,—FOR A.

FIRST, clip away the hair which grows upon it and about it; then rub the scabs off with a hair-cloth, or the back of your scissors and knife. This rubbing of it will cause it to run yellow matter. Take a linen cloth, and wipe away the filth clean; then take four pennyworth of the *Oil of Riggrum*, and mix it with a little of your own dung, and lay it on with a flat stick upon a linen cloth, and bind it to for a week: then make it clean, and dress it again



—and it is a cure. After your first dressing, you may ride him or turn him out. Proved.



## LAX.

*For a looseness in the body of any beast.*

TAKE a pint of Red Wine, or for want thereof a pint of Claret; warm it in a wine pot upon the fire, then put an ounce of beaten Cinnamon therein, and give it him a little warm: you may put thereto the yolks of two new laid eggs: once or twice is a cure. Give him warm water at night, and cold water next day, and ride him upon it. Proved.



## WIND-CHOLIC,—FOR THE.

IT comes by means of long fasting, and then the wind gets into the bag-gut with one end, and then when the horse comes to meat, he feeds so hungrily that he never chews his meat, and it goes down unchewed and undigested, and stops the wind in the gut, that it puts the horse to abundance of misery. It causeth the slime in the gut to be so extremely hot, that the horse will do nothing but tumble and wallow, and covet much to lie upon his back, with all four feet right up. The cure is, first, to prick him in the mouth and let him bleed well, then rub his mouth well with a handful of salt, then give him this drink. Take a pint of brine and boil it, but do not skim it, and put thereto a handful of new hen's dung, and give him it blood-warm, at any time when this disease happens; then ride him an hour before he drink, and three hours after it. The signs: he will stand crimpling with all four together, and lay himself down very easily,



and will rather look full than empty. If he be cold in the mouth, no cure: if he be warm in the mouth, there is hope in four or five hours to abate the pain. Either present cure, or present death. Proved.

~~~~~  
MALENDER.

To cure a Malender.

FIRST rub it dry with a cloth, then anoint it with *Crown-soap* and red *Mercury Precipitate* mixed together: when you have anointed it once, pluck the hairs which grow in it, and upon the edge of it, out; then dress him three times more; once in two days dress it, then anoint it with *Saliad* oil, and it is cured. But always before you anoint it you must rub it dry. Proved.

~~~~~  
APOPLEXY, OR PALSY,—FOR AN.

TO know this palsey, the signs are these: it either will take him in the neck, that he cannot put down his head to the ground, or in the after parts that he cannot rise; the sinews of his flank will be hard, if you feel them with your hand. The cure is thus: take six penny worth of the oil of *Peter*, and anoint the place grieved with it at one time, and dry it in with a hot iron. If you anoint the after part of him, then lay upon him the litter of a hot reeking *Muckhil*, and lay a cloth over that to hold it on, renewing it four times a day. If it be in the neck, after you have anointed it and dried it in, make a thumb band of the longest hottest dunghil-litter that you can get, and wind it round about his neck something loose, that he may eat and drink. Let the thumb-



band be so long, that it may go so often about his neck that it may reach from his shoulders to his ears. Proved.



### SCOURING MEDICINE.

*A true Medicine to make an Horse scour that is hide-bound, that is molten, that does not thrive nor fill; and to lay his coat if it stand up-wright.*

IF a horse be molten, give him this scouring medicine suddenly fasting: If an horse's skin cleave to his ribs, we say he is hide-bound; and if an horse's coat stand right up staring, and will not lie smooth, or if he do not fill well, it is then to be judged the horse is surfeited, foul and out of health. To cure all these at once or twice at the most, and make your beast thrive gallantly, give him this scouring medicine: Take half an ounce of *Aloes*, and beat it to powder, and put it into a pint of *Butter*, made afterwards round. Put the *Aloes* in three or four balls of *Butter*, and roll the balls in as much of the powder of *Falop* as will lie upon a six-pence: wash down the balls with a pint and a half of strong *Beer* lukewarm. Let him fast three or four hours after, then give him a marsh of bursted *Oats*, and warm water to drink, for two or three days. Ride or work him moderately, and the horse will thrive the better. Proved.



### SCOURING,—to stop.

TAKE a quarter of a pint of *Verjuice*, and as much *Bole-armenic* beaten to powder as a walnut; stir it well up and down in the *Verjuice*, and give it to the beast. Proved.



## LICE.

*To kill Lice in Cattle.*

TAKE a broad woollen list, as broad as your hand, that will go round about his neck ; then wet the list well in *Train-oil*, and sew it about the beast's neck, and the lice will come to it, and it will kill them if there were never so many : Daub some about the beast in several places, and they will come to it, and it will kill them. No flies in Summer will come near any wound or sore wherewith this is applied, for it will kill them. Proved.

~~~~~  
BRITTLE-HOOFS.*To make Hoofs that are brittle grow quickly, and to make them firm and strong.*

TAKE of *Garlick* seven ounces, *Rue* three handfuls, of *Allum* beaten to powder seven ounces, of old *Hog's-grease* two pounds, of *Ass's-dung*, or for want of it *Cow's-dung*, an handful ; beat and cut them all small, and mix them all together, and boil them all together well ; then with this ointment stop his fore feet, between his shoes and the bottom of his feet, and keep it on with a piece of leather, or sole-leather of a shoe : Let it be betwixt his foot and shoe. And besides, you would do well to anoint the outsides of his hoofs all over ; do this till you see his brittle-hoofs to grow tough and strong ; you will find the effect to be great.

Proved.

~~~~~  
NAVEL-GALL, SORE BACK, &c.*To heal a Navel-gall, sore Back, or a Set-fast.*

TAKE a quarter of a pint of *Train-oil*, and boil in it as much beaten *Verdegrease* as half a



walnut; put it into a pot and keep it for your use: This very medicine will heal any Navel-gall, Set-fast or sore Back suddenly, and no flies will dare to touch or come near it; if they do, they die presently. Proved.

~~~~~  
SCOURING-DRINK.

WHEN you let a horse bleed, save the blood with a bowl or dish, and put thereunto a handful of *Salt*, take the blood as it comes from him, and stir it and the salt together with your hand, that it may not clot, and give it to him again to drink with a horn fasting: whether it be the blood of another horse, or his own blood, it matters not much. Give him warm water to drink once. Proved.

~~~~~  
FOUNDERED HORSE,—FOR A.

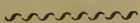
FIRST, tie a list or *Blood-cord* hard about the pastern, and that will keep the blood up into his leg, that it cannot come down into his foot: when you have taken out the soal, set on his shoe something hollow and broad, then untie the string about the pastern, and knock the out-side of the hoof, and the blood will come pouring out: let him bleed well; then put a handful of *Salt* into the bottom of the foot, and put as many *Hards*, *Flax*, or *Tow* after it, as will fill the bottom of the foot: take two or three flat sticks, and lay them between the hards and the shoe, a piece of stiff *Soal-leather* will do as well; at the end of twenty-four hours take the hards away, and take a handful of *Nettle-tops*, and a handful of *Salt*, and beat them together, and lay them to the bottom of the foot; and to keep them in, take *Hards* and



*Splinters*, as you were directed before; at forty hours end, take the hards away, and apply the same quantity of *Nettles* and *Salt*, mixed with the bigness of an egg of *Hog's-grease*; beat them all together in a mortar, and lay them to the soal of the foot, and hards and splinters as before; with this last medicine you may dress his foot once or twice more if you see cause: after you see the horse goes a little well, set on another shoe, formed with a broad web. and let it stand broad and easy; and in ten days time the horse will go very well and sound: when you come at your journey's end, wash his legs clean, and when his legs are dry, make a poultice of a quarter of a pint of white *Wine-vinegar*, and a quarter of a pound of sheep's *Kidney-suet* cut very small: let these two boil a pretty while in a skillet, and when it comes off the fire, put two or three handfuls of *Wheat-bran* to it, and stir them all together, and make it thick like a poultice, and lay it to the bottom of the foot; then hards and splinters as before you were directed; then spread the rest of the poultice upon a long piece of linen cloth, and lay it hot to the hair round about the top of the hoof and the fetlock, and let it come under the bottom of the hoof: lay it to as hot as you can; let every poultice lye on forty-eight hours; three or four poultices laid to in this manner, will do the horse much good, and cause his foot to grow and shoot out, and give him much ease, so as in a very short time he will go very sound. If an horse be bruised in the bottom of his foot with a stone, or any other thing, this poultice will give present ease: For a foundering, the beast must stand in till the bottom of his foot be grown again. I hold it best to take



out but one soal at a time, because if you take out both at a time, the horse will not be able to stand: some take out frush and all, some take out nothing but the bare soal, and leave the frush. The way is, first cord the pastern, then pare the soal, and then raise it round about the soal to the quick, as near the inside, or the outward shell of the hoof as you can, with a drawing-knife; then raise the soal at the toe; then lay hold with a pair of pincers, and pull it quite out, but beware you break not the veins in the foot. Proved.



## WOUND.

*For a new Wound made with a Stake, or such like thing, Stub or Fork.*

FIRST, wash the wound well with *Butter* and *Vinegar* melted together, then take a *Clout* and tie it about a stick's end, and dip it in some *Linseed-oil*, and run it to the bottom of the wound, anoint it well, and in a short time nothing but this will heal it and kill the gangrene of it. If the wind get into the wound, and cause it to swell, anoint it with the *Oil of Populeon* round about the swelling: *Train-oil* and *Verdigrease* melted together, will heal and skin any wound well and quickly. Proved,



## YARD,—FOR A FOUL.

*For an Horse's Yard, foul and furred without, so that he Pisses in the Cod.*

TAKE some fresh *Butter* and white *Wine-vinegar*, and melt them, then pull out his yard, and do off the filth with your hand, and wash it with the butter and vinegar till it be clean;



squirt some of it into his yard with a syringe, it will much help him in this particular.

Proved.



### FARCY.

*For a Farcy that is broken out in the Legs.*

IF you see it to be thus, then do not charge it, except you see it to swell above those buds, up to the body-wards, and then in such a case lay on the charge of *Soap* and *Brandy* to stop it from running higher, as you are in many places in this book taught before; upon the swelling all over, above the buds, but not upon the buds below, only let him bleed on the neck-veins, and in the third furrow in the roof of his mouth, and then give him one or two of the pocky *Farcion-drinks*, at three days distance, till you see all the swelling killed and dried up, with the charge of soap and brandy, and the drinks. Those buds that are broken; lay the *Allum* and fasting *Spittle* upon them, and they will dry and heal up; for those that are in the flesh, some will die in the flesh, and some will drop out. This is a certain cure.

Proved.



### WATER-FARCY.

THE signs to know it from a water-farcy, are these: He will swell in great bags as big as your head, sometimes most under the belly, and sometimes about the chaps and under his jaws. The remedy: Take a *Nail-rod*, and make it bending at the end the length of a flem, so as it may a very little more than go through the skin. At this end make it red-hot, and with it strike many holes all over the swelling, and you shall see the yellow water



come out pouring, and the swelling, whether in his jaws or chaps, or under his belly, suddenly fall quite down; this done, to qualify the heat of the iron, rub a little soap upon it, and give him but one drink for this, which you give for the pocky farcion. The more you work any farcy horse, the sooner the cure will be done, and the better he will thrive. If your horse be poisoned with any poisonable medicine, your often putting him into the cold water will destroy the working of it, that it will not go any further. Give him warm water to drink, and let him stand in the house the time of the cure. Proved.



### BUTTON FARCY.

*For a Button Farcy.*

THIS farcy you shall know by these signs: The horse will be full all over of bunches and knots, some as big as peas, some as big as nuts, they lie in bubbles in the skin, and are easy to be seen: First, let blood on both sides of his neck, and let him bleed well: the next thing is, take a little *Houseleek*, and beat it and strain it through a fine linen cloth, and put it into his ears; then take an ounce of *Aristolochia*, and grate it small, the tops of *Rue* an handful, as much *Hogs-grease* as an egg; beat these three last together till they be like a salve; as soon as you have put in the *Housleek*, into each ear alike, divide the other into two parts, and put the one half into one ear, and the other half into the other ear, and put some wool after it to keep it in, then stitch up his ears with a needle and thread, and tie a list hard about his ears, that he may not shake it out; then tie



the list of both ears together a little strait: when you have done thus, with the point of your pen knife make a little hole in his forehead; and after that, with your cornet-horn raise the skin from his forehead the breadth of your hand, round about the hole with your knife; then take a red *Dock-root* and slice it, and put into the hole three pieces of it, which will be enough at once; it will draw a great deal of corruption out of it: the corruption that comes out will scald the hair off; after the strength of the root is gone, it will drop out of itself: when you see it is dropped out, anoint it with a little fresh *Butter*; after you have put in the root, lay a plaister of *Burgundy pitch* over it to keep out the wind and cold. Let him fast seven or eight hours, and let him stand upon the bit: you shall see him slaver, champ and foam as if he was ridden; give him warm water and bran at night; let it be in his ears two days before you pull it out. Taking this course, you shall see the knots and bunches to fall in a short time, and the hair will come again upon his forehead. Proved.



### CORDS.

*To cure the Cords, which is when an Horse can neither lift up his head to the rack, nor put his head to the ground, no not to his knees.*

YOU may know this disease by the signs above; the cause thereof cometh by reason of an extreme cold, which lodgeth in the stomach, and causes the cords to set and shrink quite up, so that the beast can neither lift his head up nor down, but only to eat meat out of the crib; in this case a horse is afraid to lie down



—and if he be laid, he cannot rise. The remedy : First make him a comfortable drink of these things : Take an ounce of *Diapente*, one ounce of *Aniseeds* beaten small, three pennyworth of *English Saffron*, dry it by the fire in a paper, and crumble it small with your fingers, two ounces of *Honey*, two ounces of fresh *Butter*, a pint and a half of strong *Beer*, a quarter of a pint of white *Wine-vinegar* ; put all these things together, and set it on the fire till the butter and honey be melted, and no longer ; then take it off, and give it the beast blood warm fasting ; then walk or ride him till he be warm, then set him up, and tie him upon the bit five or six hours, clothe and litter him up warm ; after it give him a little hay, and then a mash, and no warm water that night but the water in his mash ; give him the next day in the morning another mash, and about nine or ten of the clock warm water and bran, and thus keep him for four or five days : look where the sign is, if it be in the head or stomach, do not cut him, for it will not be so well ; yet you may cut him, although the sign be there, but it will not be so well. In cutting observe this —you must cut him at the very bottom of the breast ; you shall see the vein, and under the vein lies the great sinew, as big as a tobacco-pipe stem, just by the inside to the top of his leg : when you see where the vein lies, draw the skin aside which lies over the vein, and cut that part of the skin an inch or more, which may just fall upon the vein again ; this being cut with your cornet-horn point, make a little way and you shall see a blue film lie over the vein ; chafe it a piece till you come to see the vein, with the point of your cornet-horn, then



draw the vein aside with one hand, and put your cornet-horn's end under the sinew, and raise the sinew up above the skin with your cornet-horn, and cut it quite asunder; let it go, and put a little *butter* and *salt* into the wound, and afterwards heal it up with some of the afore-named healing salves; walk him an hour at a time twice a day for a week together. If you find that with the first drink, the cold breaks at his nostrils, then give him the same drink again at three or four days distance between each drink, and order him as you are at the beginning of this receipt directed. If need require, give him a third drink. It is an extreme cold that shuts the cords: this drink will break the cold, and in a short time the beast will do well, and stir his head again.

Proved.



### STUMBLING.

*For a stumbling Horse.*

FIRST, tie him up with a halter close to a post that stands in a shop window, then take your knife and cut a hole lengthways down to his lips, endwards, in the midst of his nose, between his nostrils, the length of your thumb. When you have cut through the skin, then do off the red film with your cornet-horn's end, and you shall see a white flat sinew lie before your eye; take the point of your cornet-horn and put under it, and raise it above the skin, then pull it hard out with your cornet-horn, and turn your cornet-horn about; then pull it the second time, and turn your horn again, and so the third time; in this doing, you shall see him bring his hinder-legs to his fore-legs al-



most; when you have thus pulled and-turned the sinew two or three times about the cornet-horn, then cut the sinew under the cornet to the lips end, but cut not the sinew upon the cornet, nor about it; when you have cut it let it go, and put a little *butter* and *salt* into the wound, then over it lay a plaister of *Burgundy-pitch* to keep out the wind, and you shall see the horse go very well, and never stumble afterwards.

Proved.



### SPAVIN.

*For a Spavin as big as an Egg.*

IT groweth upon the inside of the hough of the after-leg: first, beat it with a *Blood-stick* until it be soft; then anoint it with six penny-worth of the *Oil of Origanum* upon the bone-spavin which you bruised; put your oil into an oyster-shell, or some such thing, and rub it in with your fingers, no where but upon the place which you bruised: two days after the oil hath taken its corse, take two or three ounces of the *Oil of Swallows*, and anoint the cord-sinews in the bent of the leg to reach and give liberty to the sinews that are shrunk: lay on of the oil of swallows but half an ounce at a time, and lay it on no where else, but upon the sinews on the bent of the leg; after that the oil of swallows is well soaked in, you may ride him or work him: this oil of swallows doth much lengthen and give liberty to the sinews; at three or four days distance you may lay on half an ounce more. If blood-bags come in the spavin-place at the same time the bone-spavin comes, then do not sear it with your iron by no means, but only lay the charge of *Soap* and *Brandy* hot on,



and heat it well in with a bar of iron, and for certain it will cause it to fall. Proved.

### STRANGULLION.

*For the Strangullion in a Horse.*

THE signs to know it are: it much differeth from that, when an horse cannot stale, and differeth from the disease called the gripe or fret in the guts, which will put an horse to abundance of pain, and make him to tumble and wallow: this disease called the strangullion, if a horse has it he will look gaunt and cannot piss; he will offer, and stand straining to piss, but cannot; his bladder will be ready to burst with extreme fulness and heat of his water; for present remedy do thus: take a pint of *Claret-wine* reded well, and put into it an ounce of *Ivy-berries* beaten small, one ounce of *Parsley-seeds* beaten small, and give it him at any time, once doing is enough.

Proved.

N. B. You may likewise see, for the gravel and stone, what is given to a man, and you may give it to the horse.

### CANKER,—IN THE MOUTH.

FIRST touch the edges of the canker with a lancet in various places two or three days in succession; then wash the part daily with a sponge, dipt in the following solution: Take burnt *allum* and *borax*, each one drachm, rub to a fine powder, and dissolve in spring water a quarter of a pint; then add *tincture of myrrh*, one ounce.



## SANDCRACKS AND RINGBONES.

FOR permanent relief or substantial cure, submit your horse only to the operation of *firing*, and do this neither too much nor too little.

## MALENDERS AND SALENDERS,

CONSIST of acrimonious sharp discharges, or dry harsh scurf or scabs at the backs of the knees, and the inside of the hocks behind, and are only to be got rid of in the following manner: If but newly observed frequent washing with thin greasel; and rub it, daily, with equal parts of camphorated *Spermaceti Ointment* and *Mercurial* mixed together: this may effect a cure; but if it is of long standing, a cure can only be expected by washing it often with the above gruel, and rubbing it daily with mercurial ointment.

## FARCY.

BLEED upon the first appearance in proportion to the state and size of the horse, and repeat it in four, five or six days, according to the state of the blood. Give him different food from what he has been accustomed to for three months before; and a few malt mashes at night, and a few old beans in his corn in the morning. If they are of a hard and watry kind, rub in a moderate quantity of the mercurial ointment upon the largest of them every other day for thrice; which follow with a daily washing of the following lotion for a week: Take *Carrosive Sublimate*, two drahms, rectified *Spirits of Wine*, half a pint; spring *Water*, one pint; let this be well shaken together, and the part affected plentifully moistened by



means of a small piece of sponge constantly wet with the composition. After a few operations of the foregoing give the horse a purge (for which you will find a receipt in this book.)

~~~~~  
 BROKEN WIND,—CURE FOR A.

A BROKEN wind may be cured, if the following be applied on the discovery of it: A quarter of a pound of common *tar*, and the like quantity of *honey*; beat them well together, then dissolve them in a quart of new milk; let the horse fast two hours before you give this drench; walk him an hour after, and let him fast two hours; give this drench every second day, with warm meat and drink.

~~~~~  
 SPLENT.

THE splent is a fixed callous excrescence, or hard knob, growing upon the flat of the in or outside (and sometimes both) of the shank bone; a little under, and not far from the knee and may be seen and felt.

To take it off shave the part, and beat it with a stick, prick it with a nail in a flat stick, clap on a blistering plaister as strong as you can make it; let it lie on three days; then take it off, and rub the place with half a drachm of the oil of *origany*, and as much oil of *vitriol*, mixed; if the first does not do, rub it a second time with the oils; if you find any remains of the splent, apply a second blistering plaster for twenty-four hours; walk him moderately, to prevent any swelling or excrescence from settling.

Most young horses have splents, more or less, and they will occasion lameness while they are



coming upon the bone, but after they are grown to the firmness of bones, they do not lame a horse, nor is such a horse worse for use, tho' he may not look so well to the eye.

~~~~~  
SPAVIN.

THE spavin is of the same nature, and appears, in like manner, on the instep bone behind, not far below the hoof.

To take it off, beat the bone with a bleeding stick, and rub it: then anoint it with the *oil of origanum*, tie a wet cloth about it, and with a hot brick applied to it, soak in the oil, till it be dry.

~~~~~  
WINDGALL.

WINDGALLS are several little swellings just above the fetlock joints of all the four legs: they seem, when felt, to be full of wind or jelly, but they never lame a horse; the splent and spavin always do. They all three proceed from one and the same cause, which is hard riding, travelling too far in one day; or carrying too great a weight when young.

~~~~~  
LAMENESS—A POULTICE.

IF (as he stands in the stable) you observe him to point one foot forwarder than the other, either before or behind, seeming to bear no weight on it; you may reasonably conclude he is not easy: if the shoe is the cause, the farrier can remove it presently, but if the foot is not hurt by some unknown accident, make a poultice of any sort of greens, such as *lettuce, cabbage, mallow leaves, turnip tops, or turnips themselves*, the best of all; boil them ten-

der, squeeze the water out, chop them in a wooden bowl, with two or three ounces of *hog's lard* or *butter*; put this poultice into a cloth, and tie his foot in it all night, as hot as you can.

In the morning, when the farrier comes to take off his shoe, he will find his foot cut soft and easy, so that he will soon discover (in paring with his butteris) whether he is pricked or bruised.

If pricked or otherwise wounded to the quick; open the hole with a pen-knife; and drop a little *diachylon* or *melilot*, through a pair of warm tongs, into the hole, to suck out the gravel; but the horse ointment is best; which I shall mention by and by; cover it close with dry tow, fastened in with a couple of splints, and put his foot, as before, into a hot poultice.

Repeat this till he is well, which will be within two or three nights, if you have not been too free with your pen-knife.

CAUTION AGAINST THE FARRIER.

LET not the farrier put flaming *turpentine* to it, which will close the hole before the gravel is out; in this case it must work out at the coronet above, and may require six months time to cure it.



LAMENESS,— IN THE HEEL OR POOL.

IF your horse is lame with a hole in his heel, or any part of his hoof, be it ever so deep, occasioned by any over-reach of his hind-foot, or a tread of another horse, though gravel be in it, put his foot into the aforesaid poultice mentioned in the preceding receipt, and repeat it mornings and evenings, till it is

well ; for it will suck it out, fill it again with sound flesh, and make the hoof grow over it, much sooner than any other method or medicine whatsoever.

The farrier's practice is to put caustick's into such holes, (a composition of mercury, lime, vitriol, and the like) to burn them, and to cut a quarter of the hoof away, to come to the bottom, as they say, which requires about six months to make it good again ; but oftener ends, if not always, in an unsound club foot.



CUTS, TREADS, BRUISES, &c.

ALL cuts, treads and bruises, are cured by the following *hore-ointment* ; not only soonest and safest, but without leaving any mark :

HORSE-OINTMENT.

INTO a clean pipkin, that holds about a quart, put the bigness of a pullet's egg of yellow *resin* ; when it is melted over a middling fire, add the same quantity of *bees wax* ; when that is melted, put in half a pound of *hog's-lard* ; when that is dissolved, put in two ounces of *honey* ; when that is dissolved, put in half a pound of common *turpentine* ; keep it gently boiling, stirring it with a stick all the time ; when the *turpentine* is dissolved, put in two ounces of *verdegrease* : you must take off the pipkin (else it will rise into the fire in a moment) set it on again, and give it two or three wambles, and strain it through a coarse sieve, into a clean vessel for use, throwing the dregs away.

This is an extraordinary ointment for a wound or bruise in flesh or hoof, broken knees,

gaul'd backs, bites, crack'd heels, mallanders, or when you geld a horse, to heal and keep the flies away; nothing takes fire out of a burn or scald in human flesh so soon; I have had personal experience of it. I had it out of Degrey, but finding it apt to heal a wound at the top before the bottom was sound, I improved it by adding an ounce of *verdegrease*.



SWELLED AND CRACKED HEELS.

IF his legs and heels should swell and crack, and become stiff and sore, so that he can hardly be got out of the stable, in the morning, and perhaps did not lie down all night; you may travel on, but walk him for the first mile or two, very gently, till the swelling falls, and he begins to feel his legs.

When you end the day's journey, wash his fore-legs with warm water, and a great deal of soap; or foment his heels, (first cutting away the hair very close) with old *urine* pretty warm, for a quarter of an hour, by dipping a woollen cloth, or an old stocking into the urine, squeezing it and then applying it to the part affected, having first well washed it with the urine. You may then prepare the poultice, and tie it on hot, as soon as it can be got ready, letting it stay on all night. Feed him as usual, and offer him warm water in the house. About nine or ten o'clock (that is, an hour or two after he is put up for all night, and fed) give him

Half an ounce of *Ethiop's mineral*. Ditto of *balsam of sulphur terib*. Ditto of *diapente*, or powdered *anniseeds*, mixed and made into a

ball with *honey* or *treacle*. You may give him a pint of warm *ale* after it.

Don't stir him out of the stable, on any account whatever, till you mount him the next morning for your journey, and give him a draught of warm water in the stable before you set out (that being proper on account of the ball.) When you are on the road, he may drink water as usual.

The next night omit the ball, but continue the poultice.

The third night give the second ball.

The fifth night give the third ball, and still continue the poultice till his heels are well: but if you can get no sort of poulticing, then melt *hog's-lard* or *butter*, and with a rabbit's foot, or a rag, grease his heels with it very hot.

If he is a young horse, and the distemper new, you will hear no more of it; but if he's old, and hath had it a long time on him, 'twill require further repetition.

N. B. During this operation, you must not gallop on the road, but ride moderately, for sweating will retard the cure. You must consider that wet weather, and wet roads, are by no means proper for this regimen.

Travelling indeed is an improper time for this cure, except in cases of necessity: if you can give your horse rest, his heels will get well sooner by turning him out to grass, and renewing the poultices; but he should be kept in the stable, while he takes the medicine.

If the greasy poultice does not effect a cure, which may sometimes be the case; after fomenting the legs with *urine*, anoint his heels well with the following ointment warm every night: Take ten *eggs*, boil them hard, put

them in cold water, when cold, separate the yolks from the whites, pnt all the yolks into a frying-pan, bruise them with a spoon over the fire, till they turn black and yield a fetid oil, which decant off, and mix it, whilst warm, with two ounces of *honey*, as much *lead* in powder, and then keep it for use. It should be heated in a horse's heels with a fire shovel. The heels in the day time should be constantly well rubbed. This ointment exceeds any thing that can be applied for a burn or scald in the human body, if applied soon after the accident, and the part affected be anointed for an hour after, by times, with a feather.

I have often cured a horse of greasy heels by giving him only an ounce and a half of *salt petre* pounded fine or dissolved and mixed with his corn, morning and evening. But this must be continued for a month or more, till his legs are well; but they should be kept washed as above. If you give a horse five or six pounds of *salt petre*, in this manner, it will not hurt him; it will free him from all sorts of humors, and put him into excellent spirits.



MALLENDER.

THE mallender is a crack in the head of the knee; it oozes a sharp humor like that at the heels or frush: a horse dare not step out for fear of tearing it wider; 'tis so painful it takes away his belly; it makes him step short and stumble much.

The same method, medicine, greasing and poulticing (which you used for swelled or cracked heels) will cure it.

STALING,—DIFFICULTY OF.

SOMETIMES a horse cannot stale, and will be in great pain: to ease him, take half an ounce of *anniseeds*, beaten fine in a mortar, one handful of *parsley-roots*, boil those in a quart of old strong beer, and strain it off, and give it him warm.

~~~~~  
SHOULDER-SLIP.

IF you wrench his shoulder, mix two ounces of the *oil of spike* with one ounce of the *oil of swallows*, and half an ounce of *tnrpentine*, and with your hands rub a little of it all over the shoulder. It will be best to warm the oils well with a broad mouth fire-shovel, or plate of iron, hot. Then bleed him and let him rest two days. This will cure a slight strain. Should he continue lame, you may travel on, but slowly, and he will grow well upon the road, but repeat the oils.

~~~~~  
STIFLE.

IF you strain your horse in the stifle, a little bone upon the thigh bone, above the inside bead of the hoof, (you find such another in a leg of mutton); the turnip poultice will infallibly cure it, but you may rub in the oils first, as ordered for a shoulder slip. By its situation, you will find a difficulty to keep the poultice on, yet it may be done with a few yards of list.

If it is not well, or very much mended in two or three days, examine the hip, perhaps you may find it there; but this must be cured by oiling, as in a shoulder-slip, for the poultice cannot be fastened on there.

WORMS OR BOTTS,—FOR THE.
GIVE him two ounces of Ethiop's *mineral* made into a ball, with an ounce of the powder of *anniseeds*, and a spoonful of *honey*.

N. B. But you must not give this to a mare with foal; you may bleed her in the roof of the mouth.

~~~~~  
DOCKING.

IN docking a horse, never put under his tail, the knife or instrument which is to cut it off; because you then must cut the tail, which will bruise it, and it will be apt to mortify; which is the reason so many horses die with docking—but lay his tail next the block, and (at one blow) drive the knife through a joint, if possible; stand prepared with a hot iron to sear the end of the dock and stop the bleeding.

~~~~~  
QUINCY, STRANGLING, OR
COLD.

For the Quincy, Strangling, or Cold, which breaks out at the Nose.

THE squinsey breeds the canker in the mouth, and at the roots of the tongue. At that time the horse hath in his wind-pipe and stomach a great deal of tough, thick phlegm; and when he cougheth much, as he will, thinking to void it, it will come in lumps into his mouth, and he will swallow it down again; and at that time his breath will be very hot, and his mouth very red: and if he have a canker in his throat, or at the root of his tongue, or in his mouth, you may discern its smell by the heat and fetid breath. To cure the canker, see page 115, and there is also the receipt, and here also will cause a present cure. Now, to cure the strangling or a cold that runs at the

nose, or hath done for half a year or more, or quincy, when he is troubled with tough thick phlegm. For these three last mentioned, take the following ingredients, and give them as you are directed: First, one ounce of *anniseeds*, an ounce of *turmeric* beaten to powder, half a quarter of *brandy* or *aqua vitæ*, half a dozen spoonfuls of *white-wine* or *vinegar*, a pint and half of strong *beer*; put all these into a skillet, and heat them blood warm, and give it to the beast fasting: then presently run the point of the cornet-horn into the third furrow in the roof of his mouth, and let him bleed, then walk him a mile and set him up. Clothe and litter him warm. Let him stand upon the bit four or five hours; he will sweat with his drink till one drop follow another. If you see he be sick and desirous to lie down, you may let him. Give him no mashes, but only warm water to drink, with an handful or two of wheat bran put into it, and the next morning warm water and bran put again; and presently after two ounces of *honey*, and half a pint of *white-wine*, or half a pint of *wine-vinegar*, if you have not *white-wine*; walk him a mile after it. The third day in the morning after this drink, in the beginning of the receipt, give him this cordial; three pints of stale *beer*, *household-bread*, a piece as big as a great toast, and crum it in a quarter of a pound of *butter*; put them into a skillet, and, when warm, give it to the beast.

~~~~~  
MANGE.

*For a dry inward Mange.*

THE signs are these: his hair will come off by plats, and sometimes it will come all off



from head to tail, and there will be a dry scurvy mange, as well where the hair comes off, as where it stays on ; it is an extreme heat of the blood which causes the hair to scale off, and causeth the dry mange in his body. If his body be dried up and wasted, that the horse be miserable lean and overcome with it, then give him this one drink and no more, viz. one ounce of the flour of *brimstone*, two ounces of *rosin* beaten small, one ounce of *turmerick* beaten small, one ounce of *anniseeds* beaten small : put all these, except the *brimstone*, into a quart of strong *beer* heated blood warm, and give it him fasting, and put the *brimstone* at the mouth of the horn, to put it down with the other things : tie him up to the rack for four or five hours ; then give him warm water and bran, at night bursted oats. The next day after, give him in his provender two spoonfuls of *rosin* beaten to powder, at night the like ; the next day the like, and then no more ; this is to cleanse and purge away the mangy surfeit that is in his body, and causeth the outward mange. Also do thus, two or three days after his drink, scrape off all the scabs and scurf clean with the back of your knife, or some other thing for that purpose, till the blood and water appear. Then presently mix an equal proportion of *oil of turpentine* and *beer* together as will serve, and shake them well together in a glass vial, and anoint the horse all over but once, and it is an absolute cure. It will smart terribly, tie him close for an hour, till it have taken its course. But if you be merrily disposed, as soon as you have drest him all over with it, bid the fellow go home with him and set him up ; but, be-



lieve it, he will not hold him long, for the beast will run away with him, and kick and wallow, and rub in a most strange manner, that one would think he was quite mad; but it will have done smarting in half an hour. It is a gallant receipt. If the horse be not much pined and shrunk of his flesh, do nothing but anoint him once outwardly, and give him this drink, and the *oil of turpentine* and *beer*, will kill the mange of a beast, dog, bullock, or any thing, with once dressing.

Proved.

~~~~~  
GLANDERS.

A medicine for the Glanders.

TAKE a quart of red *vinegar*, being no wine vinegar; put it over the fire, and put thereto two spoonfuls of *English honey*, two spoonfuls of *elecampane*, beaten into fine powder, and searse it through a fine searser; and as much *rock-allum* as the bigness of an egg, beaten into fine powder; half a pint of *sallad oil*: put in your *sallad oil* after all these have boiled together one quarter of an hour, then take it off the fire, and let it stand until it be milk-warm, then give your horse six spoonfuls in each nostril with a little horn: after you have given this drink, ride him two or three turns and no more; then tie his head down to his foot for the space of four hours; then let him fast four hours; you must give this drink at nine several times, being three days betwixt every drink—every second day after he hath had his drink, give him *chickens guts* warm, rolled in beaten *Bay salt*, and put them down his throat, giving him warm water and wet hay all the time you give him this drink, and this will amend

the glanders, and the mourning in the chine.
Proved.



COLD.

A medicine for any Cold that is not the Glanders,
TAKE two spoonfuls of *pepper* well beaten, two spoonfuls of *mustard*, four spoonfuls of *sallad oil*, four roasted *onions* roasted very soft, and cut them very small; then take two spoonfuls of *elecampane* made into fine powder; mingle all these together, and make them into balls with fresh butter, and give your horse three balls at a time. Nine balls given at three times will cure him, so you travel him upon it.



STRAIN.

For a Strain in the Shoulder.

TAKE two ounces of *oil of pompilion*, and two ounces of *oil of spike*, two ounces of *linseed oil*; rub these oils well together upon his shoulder, and warm it in with an hot iron: then let him be blooded in the shoulder, and hopple his fore-feet together, and this will cure him.



SINEW-SPRUNG-HORSE,—FOR A.

TAKE a pint of *linseed oil*, and boil it; then put in three penny-worth of *aqua vitæ*, and stir them together, then anoint your horse's leg with it, and this will cure him.



BOTTS, OR WORMS.

An approved cure for the Botts, and all manner of Worms, of what nature soever.

TAKE a quart of new *milk*, and as much of the purest clarified *honey* as will make it extraordinary sweet; then being blood warm

give it to the horse very early in the morning, he having fasted all the night before; which done, bridle him up, and let him stand tied to the empty rack for more than two hours.

Then take half a pint of *white-wine*, and dissolve into it a good spoonful or more of *black soap*, and being well incorporated together (the horse having stood two hours as aforesaid) give it him to drink, and let him fast other two hours more after it, and the worms will void in great abundance.

ANOTHER.

TAKE the soft downy hairs which grow in the ears of an horse, and which you clip away when you poll him, and the little short tuft which grows on the top of his forehead, underneath his foretop. and a pretty quantity of them, mix them well with a pottle of sweet *oats*, and so give them to the horse to eat, and there is not any thing that will kill worms more assuredly.

~~~~~  
STONE,—FOR THE.

TAKE an *onion* or more, and steep it in wine, and give it your horse, and it will make him piss immediately; present ease for the stranguary: forces away sand, gravel, stones, and tartarous matter, from the urinary parts.

Proved.

~~~~~  
STRANGUARY,—FOR THE.

TAKE a quart of new *milk*, and put into it a quarter of a pound of *sugar*, and give it your horse six mornings; and let his food be warm and comfortable, such as bursted oats, mashes

made of malt and bran ; give him warm water to drink. Proved.

~~~~~  
WIND-GALL.

*For a Wind-gall.*

FIRST shave off the hair, then get the inner bark of white walnut, as soon as it is off the tree, and clap it to the wind-gall, and there bind it on, and let it abide on for twenty-four hours ; whilst that remains, you should boil some of the bark in running water, and teem the liquor on the wind-gall, so as the bark may not dry ; at the end of twenty-four hours take the bark from the wind-gall, and anoint it with fresh butter and hog's grease, and it is a cure.

~~~~~  
SWELLED LEGS.

For Swelled or Goured Legs.

THERE is nothing better for a horse when his legs are swelled or goured than that you ride him twice a day to some running stream, and there let him stand a quarter of an hour, or that you wash his legs well, with the coldest water, in the stable twice a day at the least.

~~~~~  
FIG,—FOR THE.

IF a horse has received any hurt either by stub, nail, thorn, bone, splint or stone, either in the sole or any other part of the foot, and not well dressed or perfectly cured, there will grow in the place a certain superfluous piece of flesh like unto a fig, full of little white grains, as you see in a fig ; the cure is, first with a hot iron to cut the fig clean away, and keep the flesh down with turpentine, hog's grease and a



little *wax*, molten together, laid in the sore, with a little tow stopping the hole hard, that the flesh rise not, dressing it once a day till it be whole : or thus, after you have cut clean away the fig, then take the tops of young *net-tles* and chop them very small, then lay them upon a cloth, just as big as the fig, then take the powder of *verdegrease* and strew it upon the chopt *nettles*, and so bind it to the wound ; thus dress it once a day until the hoof has covered the sore, and it is a most certain cure.



### BROKEN WIND.

*For Pursic or Broken Wind.*

TAKE of *liquorice ball* one ounce, dissolve it in one gallon of spring or running water, give your horse one pint thereof every morning, and take *barley* or *wheat*, and let it grow until you see the beard or cheat begin to spring, and give it to your horse, two or three quarts at a time ; if you mix a little good *wine* with your *liquorice* water, it would be much the better ; be sure you sprinkle the hay he eats with fair water, and it is a certain remedy.

N. B. If you have a mind to stop the heaving of his lungs for a few hours, you may take a quart of new *milk*, and put into it a good handful of his own dung, stir it and give it to the horse, but let him have no cold water or any drink ; this will stop it for a few hours, perhaps a day.



### YELLOWWS.

*For the Yellowws.*

BY the signs before recited, in this disease, a horse will drop down on a journey. At all



times when it happens, immediately take out your knife and prick him in the third bar in the mouth, and let him bleed two quarts; then give him half an ounce of *diapente* in a quart of strong *beer*, and it is a present remedy. If you cannot get *diapente*, be sure you get some comfortable cordial.

~~~~~

SINEW-STRAIN.

A certain cure for a Sinew-strain.

TAKE one pint of *wine lees*, put it over the fire, then take of *mud-wall* straws, and all that has no lime in, and put it to the *wine lees*, and boil it to the consistency of a salve; then clap it on hot to the strain, and this doing once or twice is a perfect cure.

~~~~~

### WIND-GALL, SPAVIN, SPLINT, &c.

*The master medicine for any Wind-gall, Sinew-strain, Blood-spavin, Splint, Curb, &c.*

FIRST, shave off the hair, then take of *con-tharides*, which is a fly the apothecaries make their blister-plasters of, half a quarter of an ounce, mixed with a little *nerve-oil*; spread that upon the grieved part, and tie the horse up eight or ten hours till it has done working. Next morning squeeze out the water with your finger and thumb; but take care not to break the skin. If you think once does not do, the next day spread on some more, and do as before directed, and twice certainly will perfect the cure.

It is best to spread the medicine on the grievance thin; two or three days after anoint it with *sallad oil*, or fresh *butter*, or *neatsfoot oil*, and it is a perfect cure.



## STRAIN.

*For a Strain in the Stifle.*

TAKE of the oil of turpentine, one ounce of linseed oil, as much of oil of peter, as much of olive oil, as much of oil origanum, half an ounce of oil debay, and nerve oil half an ounce ; shake them well together, and anoint the grieved place once in twelve hours, and with your hand rub it well in, and it will take away his lameness in forty-eight hours.



## ULCER.

*For an Ulcer in Man or Beast.*

TAKE three quarts of new milk, a good handful of white plantain, and set it on the fire, and let it boil till a pint is consumed ; then take three ounces of allum, and one ounce and an half of white sugar-candy, pound them both to fine powder, and put it into the milk and plantain, and set it again upon the fire and let it boil a little till it come to a curd ; then strain it, and with the whey, being warmed, bathe the ulcer ; then dry the wound, and lay on some unguentum basilicon ; this drieth, cleanseth and killeth any itch, and healeth the foulest ulcers either in man or beast that may be. Also, if you take of milk one quart, of allum powder two ounces, of vinegar a spoonful, and when the milk doth seethe, then put in the allum and vinegar ; then take away the curd and use the rest, and this will dry up and heal any foul old sore whatsoever.



## SPLENT.

*An approved and certain method to take away any Splent.*

TAKE the root of *elecampane*, wash it clean, then lap it up in wet brown paper and roast it in hot embers till it be well done, but take care you do not burn it; then rub and chafe the splent, and as hot as the horse can bear clap this root right on the splent, and bind it fast, and in two or three dressings it will consume it quite. I would not have you lay it on so hot as to scald. Also if you rub the splent with the *oil of origanum*, morning and evening, it will take it away.



## HUMOURS.

*To dissolve Humours.*

A POUND of figs, well stamped with salt till they come to a perfect salve, dissolveth all manner of humours, by opening the pores and giving large passages.



## BONES,—OUT OF JOINT.

FIRST swim your horse in some pond, creek, or river, and if that does not bring the joint into its place, then cast your horse on his back, and put four strong pasterns on him below his fetlocks; then draw him up by his legs so as his back may no more than just touch the ground; then draw the grieved leg higher than the rest till the poise and weight of his body has made the joint shoot into its right place again, which you shall know by the sudden and great crack it will make when the joint falleth into its true place. Then gently poise him and



let the horse rise, and let him blood in the plait vein, or in the master vein, which is the big vein that is in the inside of the thigh, and then anoint the grieved place with the ointment for broken bones, or else with the *oil of mandrakes*, or the *oil of swallows*, both which are of sovereign virtue.

~~~~~  
GELDING.

Gelding of Colts or old Horses.

GELDING is so common a practice, that there is no great occasion of enlarging much thereon. I would advise no unskilful hand to undertake any thing of the kind, lest he add disgrace to himself and kill the horse ; those that are practitioners and skilful, I would much recommend to them the use of the true and genuine *British oil*, poured into the holes as soon as the stones are out, and more especially for aged horses ; and the general use of *train oil* for supplying the cuds ; and by thus using you may cut at any age without danger. The dregs of the *train oil* is best. Proved.

~~~~~  
BITE.

*For the bite of a Mad Dog, or bite or sting of Serpents.*

TAKE raw *onions*, with green *rue*, a little salt, and some of the powder of the root of *elecampane*, beat them together in a mortar, and mix it well ; apply it to the wound plaiſterwise, and renew it as occasion requires.

~~~~~  
POISON, OR VENOM,—AGAINST.

TAKE a good handful of *rue*, boil it in three pints of new milk ; then add one gill of *sallad*

oil; give it the horse blood warm with an horn—and it is excellent against poison. Proved.

~~~~~  
LAX.

*For a Lax or much Scouring.*

TAKE of *allum* and *bolearmoniac*, finely powdered, one penny-worth, put it into a quart of new milk, stir it till it come to a curd; then give it to the horse with a horn. A pint of *verjuice* is an exceeding thing for a sucking foal.

~~~~~  
POLL-EVIL, FISTULA, &c.

How to make Black Ash Lie for the curing of Ulcers, Poll-evils, Fistulas, and the like.

TAKE of the tops and bark of *black ash*, and burn it in some clean place to ashes; then put those ashes into a vessel that has a hole and a spile in it; then put a little straw in the vessel, and the ashes on the straw; then pour on hot boiling water, and cover it up; let it stand three or four hours, then draw it off, and if it be not strong enough, which you may know by its slipperiness, put it on the ashes again; you may either boil it or let it stand some time, but it will be the stronger for boiling; then draw it off, and put it into a bottle for use. This lie, made warm, and put into any ulcer or fistula, will of itself search, cleanse and heal it to admiration soon.

~~~~~  
BARRENNESS,—IN MARES.

*Of the diseases incident to Mares, and of the barrenness of the Womb.*

THE only disease incident to the womb of a mare, (as far as our farriers are experienced)



is barrenness, which may proceed from different causes, as through the intemperance of the matrix being either too hot, and fiery ; or too cool and moist ; or too dry, or elsee too short and narrow ; or having the neck thereof turned awry ; or by means of some obstruction or stopping in the matrix ; or that the mare is too fat, or too lean, and divers other such like causes. Now the cure thereof, according to the old farriers, is to take a good handful of *leeks*, and stamp them in a mortar with four or five spoonfuls of *wine* ; then put thereunto twelve flies called *cantharides* ; then strain them all together, with a sufficient quantity of water, and serve the mare therewith two days together by pouring the same into her nature with a glister pipe, made for that purpose, and at the end of three days next following, offer the horse unto her that should cover her ; and after she is covered wash her nature twice with cold water.

Proved.

~~~~~  
BROKEN BONES,—FOR.

FIRST sling your horse, so that he may hang and scarcely bear any weight upon his feet ; if it be a fore leg that is broken, then raise him a little highest forward ; but if an hind leg, then a little behind, so that the horse may most rest upon the sound members. When your horse is thus slung, set the bone in its right place ; when done, bathe it well with warm vinegar, or with spirits of wine, and wrap it close about with unwashed wool, sheered directly from the sheep's back, binding it fast with a good linen roller, first soaked with oil and vinegar. See that your roller is smooth and plain : and upon that lay more wool, dipt

in oil and vinegar ; then splint with three broad splints bound at both ends with strong twine, and in that case keep the horse forty days, and do not move it above three times in twenty days, unless it shrink, and so want to be fresh drest ; always keeping his leg as straight as possible. Do not fail of pouring oil and vinegar, once every day through the splints. At the end of forty days, if you find the bones are knit, loose him that the horse may stand a little on the fore leg. If he tread firm, let him quite loose, and then anoint the fore place with soft grease, or with one of the followiug plaisters or ointments: Take *spuma argenti*, and *vinegar*, of each one pound, of *sallad oil* half a pound, of *armoniac* and *turpentine*, three ounces, of *wax* and *rosin* two ounces, of *bitumen*, *pitch* and *verdegrease*, of each half a pound, boil the vinegar, oil and *spuma argenti*, until it get thick, then put in the pitch ; that being melted, take the pot from the fire, and put in the bitumen ; that also being melted, put in all the rest, and set the pot to the fire again, and let it incorporate well ; then strain it for use. Before you lay on this plaister, use this ointment : take of *sallad oil* one quart, of *hog's grease* and *spuma nitre*, each one pound, and let them boil together until they come to bleb above ; then take it off the fire. When you use this ointment, let it be very hot, and rub and chafe it well in ; then put on one of the plaisters, and it is most sovereign for any broken bones.



FISTULA, OR POLL-EVIL.

For a Fistula or Poll-evil.

THE root of *black ellebore* is a certain remedy, but dangerous if used by an unskilful hand :

in case the ulcers are extreme bad, you may put a piece of the root into it, and it will foment and cleanse it, and cleanse it to run as long as there is any filthy matter to come forth—but be sure you let it go no further, for it will draw the horse all up in a heap if it does, and it may be he never more will be well. If it be used in the manner of a rowel in any part of the horse's body, it will draw all humours to that place; it is so dangerous, I would not recommend the use of it to any unskilful hand; some of the roots, stuck into an apple, and given the horse in manner of a ball, is a very good purge in extreme cases. Proved.

GLANDERS.

For the Glanders.

THE signs are laid down in this book: some young horses, with a cold or a surfeit, will run a blueish matter at the nostrils, but that is no glander; on the contrary, nature is relieving itself; when the matter from the nostrils is of a glewycruddy nature, greenish, white or yellowish, or thick, the glands under the jaws fallen, kernels, one larger than the other, and several small ones sticking close to the bone; those kernels in the mourning of the chine are generally more spread under the whole chaps, and loose in the midst of the two bones, just under the wind-pipe or wesand, the gleet at the nostrils is generally white and clotty; by these signs a glander may be known. The remedy, take *goose grease*, an quantity you like—and rub it on the pole and nape of the neck, as often as occasion require. This is the whole remedy. I have in degree experienced its effi-

cacy in some sort in this disorder, yet not in a case of desperacy, with success. I am of opinion, provided the spine is not too far ulcerated, that in this remedy, and fuming at the nostrils, with any of the fumes in this book laid down, or *assafidita* and *castro*, and two or three drinks of the decoction of *sassafras root*, a quarter of an ounce of *gum guaiacum* dissolved in it, given blood warm, will perfect a cure speedily. This remedy seems to be nearly calculated for the disorder in desperate cases: the goose greese thus used will cause any common running at the nostrils speedily to evacuate, disperse and dry up, which I have proved: but shall leave farther trial to the judicious.

Proved.



SORE BACK.

A Plaister for a Sore Back.

TAKE of *wheat meal*, what quantity you like, of *sheep dung* half as much, of *rye meal* half as much as *sheep dung*, mix them all together, and boil them in spring water until they come to a thick paste; then take a piece of *allum'd leather* or *tow cloth*, and spread thereon, and so clap it on the sore: you must tie your horse awhile, or otherwise he will gnaw the plaister off. If possible, you must let the plaister stay on till it comes off of itself, and it will cure him. Also, you make a plaister of *soot*, *rye meal*, *whites of eggs*, and *honey*; beat all together, and apply it as above, and it will cure it; but the other is the best. If there be any filthy matter in the sore, that must first be let out. For a new gall, when you take off your saddle, wash it with *salt and water*, or fair

water, or what you may, but I recommend the water made for running ulcers, before recited in this book. I say, when you have washed, take of the root *clownswort*, or *clownwoundwort*, burn it to a coal, not ashes, and pound it very fine, and strew the powder on the sore—this in a few days will cure any horse's back, if it be nearly rotten. The more you ride or work a horse that is galled, the sooner he will be well, if you keep your saddle or collar from the wound. Proved.

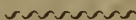


PAINS, SCRATCHES, SINEWS PUTRIFIED, &c.

For the Pains or Scratches, or rotten, broken Cuts, and putrified Sinews,

IF it be the pains and scratches, do thus: Take a pail of fair water, if two or three, and wash his legs clean, and clip away the hair close to the skin, so far as his legs are crannied or scabby, then with a pail or two of fair water, wash his legs clean again, and let him stand till he be dry; then take half a pound of *English honey*, one ounce of beaten *pepper*, ten heads of *garlic*, put all these into a bowl or cup, and beat them together till they come to a salve. If the pains and scratches be on both legs, then divide the salve into two parts, and lay one half upon one sheet of paper, and the other half upon another half of grey paper, and take a broad piece of linen cloth, and lay it over the paper, and lay the plaister to the hinder part of his legs, where the sore always is, and sew them on with a needle and thread pretty hard, so as it may not come off; saw it close in the fetlock, and all the way up so

far as his legs are scabby, and let it lie on two days. You must make a small thumb-band of fine hay, and wind all over his legs, and over the plaister, and let it remain as long; at two days end, take a linen cloth and wipe the chaps of every cranny and crack in his heels clean; then lay on a fresh plaister, and do as you did before in every particular; and at two days end take away that plaister; then lay on another, and let it lie on three days more; and in three or four times thus dressing, it will be quite dried up, and whole. Let him not come in the water all the time of his cure. If his sinews be rotten, broken, cut in pieces, or much putrified, then apply this medicine as before, and let it lie on the same time as before; and as it heals dress it the seldomer, and bind a thumb-band of hay over the plaister, and keep him out of the water, and in the house all the time of the cure. This salve will draw clean, and knit the sinews together in a wonderful manner. It is for pains and scratches, and sinews in this nature, the best cure in the world. If one or two of the pocky farcy drinks were given in this case, I am confident it would much further the cure, and dry up those humours in his body, which feed the scratches in his legs. Proved.



COLD.

For a young Horse that hath taken a new Cold.
TAKE water and salt as much as will suffice, brew them well together, make it blood-warm and give it to him, and do after as is necessary. This I find to be singular good to be given to a young horse that hath newly taken cold. Proved.

FRUSH.

FARRIERS ignorantly endeavor to stop a running at the heels or frush, by applying *bole-armoniac, allum, vitriol, lime-water, verdegrease*, which are quite contrary to the cure; for all typticks repel the sharp distillation which should have a free passage; else the limbs will swell to a very great degree, and must, in time, fall and burst out in such a tide as will be hard to stem. For stopping is not curing.

Four parts in five of our farriers, maintain, that the farcin lies between the flesh and the skin. Why then don't rowelling cure it? But it does not lie between the flesh and the skin, therefore rowelling never did, nor never can cure it. For example,

Before the buds break out, the veins cord; which is a strong presumption that the distemper hath its origin in the blood; because there is its first appearance. Besides, take a pint of blood from the neck of any horse, whose veins are corded any where about him, and 'twill show its corruption as soon as 'tis cold. Now, bleeding checks the distemper; whereas, if you did not bleed, it would break out in every part about him; from the ears to the soles of his feet; even in the corners of his eyes, his yard, and the very inside of his hoofs, or wherever there are any blood vessels.

These demonstrations oblige me to believe the distemper does not lie in the skin, but in the veins; but the most substantial proof is the cure, wick I can perfect without touching buds, or making the least outward application. To cure this, see receipt for the Farcy and Frush, page 237.

COUGH, SHORTNESS OF BREATH,
PURSINESS, OR BROKEN WIND,—
THREE EXCELLENT MEDICINES FOR.

FIRST, take three spoonfuls of *tar*, sweet *butter* as much, beat and work them well together; add fine powder of *liquorish*, *anniseeds* and *sugarcandy*, till it be brought to a hard paste, then make it in three round balls, and put into each ball four or five *cloves of garlic*: give them to the horse, and warm him with riding both before and after his receiving the pills. He must fast full two hours both before and after.

Second, take a piece of fat *bacon*, four fingers long, and almost two fingers square, then with your knife make several holes in it, and stop in them as many *cloves of garlic* as you can; then roll it in the powder of *liquorish*, *anniseeds*, *sugarcandy* and *flower of brimstone*, all equally mixed together. Give it your horse fasting in the morning, at least twice a week, and ride him after it, and be sure you sprinkle all the hay he eats with water, and it will soon perfect the cure.

Third, take of the *syrup of coltsfoot*, two ounces of *elecampane*, *anniseeds* and *liquorish root*, half as much of each, pounded into a fine powder, *sugarcandy* two ounces, divided into two equal parts; then with sweet *butter* work the *syrup* and *powders* with one part of the *sugarcandy* into a stiff paste; then make balls or pills thereof, and roll them in the other part of the *sugarcandy*; then give the horse one ball or two every morning fasting, exercising him gently an hour after. Thus do for divers mornings till you find him mend, which he will do in a short time.

CHOLIC, BELLY-ACHE, BOTTS.

TAKE one quarter of a pound of *tobacco*, and boil it in a pint of water, which give to your horse, and it will cure either cholic, belly-ache or botts. Proved.

N. B. Any person who will give their horse one leaf of tobacco cut fine, in their feed, once every two, three or four weeks, it will prevent the above named diseases.

~~~~~  
RING-BONE.

TAKE *train oil*, one quart, which rub daily on the part affected until done, heating it well in with a hot iron every time of rubbing. This stops it from forming into sinews, suples the joint, and makes the horse as whole and active as ever ; yet the appearance will not be entirely taken away. Proved.

~~~~~  
DRENCHES AND MEDICINES.

General Drenches and Medicines for all inward Diseases or Surfeits in Horses.

THERE is no medicine more sovereign for all diseases which breed in horses bodies than to take half an ounce of the powder *diapente*, brewed either with wine, sack, muskadine, or clear beer or strong clear cider. If it be for heart sickness, give it the horse to drink in the morning fasting, at least three mornings together, especially when the horse begins first to droop. The next is, viz. Take of *celandine* two handfuls, both roots and leaves, chop and bruise them, take of *rue* as much, *red sage* and *mint* as much, and of *aloes* half an ounce ; boil these in a pottle of strong beer or ale till

one half be consumed ; then give the horse to drink blood-warm fasting.

ANOTHER.

TAKE four ounces of *diapente*, and mix it with four ounces of clarified *honey*, and keep it in a close glass ; give half an ounce thereof, with one pint of sweet *wine*, to drink, and it is an excellent drench.

ANOTHER.

TAKE of *liquorish* one ounce, of *anniseeds*, *cumminseeds*, and *elecampane* roots, of each half an ounce, of *turmeric* and *bays*, of each a quarter of an ounce, of long *pepper* and *fennugreek*, of each two drachms, pound these small, and searse them ; then put five spoonfuls into a quart of warm *ale*, with a little *butter* or *oil*, and it is very sovereign for any disease coming from old causes.

ANOTHER.

TAKE a quart of good *ale* or *wine*, and a raw egg beaten and mingled with twelve scruples of quick *sulphur*, and four scruples of *myrrh* made into powder, and give it the horse, and it is a good drench. The root of *sea onion*, the root of *poplar*, mingled with common salt, given in water, keepeth the horse long in health. The powder of *brimstone*, with sweet *wine*, is a good drench. Take fine powder of *fennugreek*, and seeth it in water until it wax thick, then add to it one pound of sweet *butter*, one ounce of *linseed oil*, and as much of the *oil of nuts* ; mingle them well together, and give it the horse in three or four days drinks, a pretty quantity at a time. *Celandine* boiled

in *beer* or *ale*, from a pottle to a quart, with the bigness of a walnut of *brimstone* added to it, is an excellent drench. *Garlic* and *houseleek* beaten together, boiled in *beer* or *ale*, from a pottle to a quart, mixed with *anniseeds* and *sugarcandy*, and a pretty quantity of *sallad oil*, is a choice drench for any sickness which doth proceed from hot causes, such as the *phrensy*, *anticor*, and such like. Thus much of general drenches, and their uses.

~~~~~  
YELLOW-WATER.

FIRST bleed in the inside of either of the hind legs; then make up the following compound: *Flour of brimstone*, two ounces, *antimony*, *saltpetre* and *assafetidi*, of each half an ounce; mix and dissolve these in half a pint of warm water; which give to your horse, and repeat it every other day for six times. This has been found an effectual cure for this prevalent and dangerous disorder.

Proved.

~~~~~  
BOG-SPAVIN.

To cure a Bog-spavin.

FIRST open the bog, which will discharge a large quantity of matter; dress the sore with *dossils* dipped in *oil of turpentine*; putting into it, one ounce in three or four days, a powder made of calcined *vitriol*, *allum*, and *bole*: by this method of dressing, the bog will decrease and come away, and the cure will be successfully completed without any visible scar.

~~~~~  
RUPTURES.

*To cure the Ruptures.*

ON their first appearance, endeavors should



be made to return them by the hand, but if the swelling should be hard and painful, in order to relieve the stricture, and relax the parts through which the gut or caul has passed, let a large quantity of blood be immediately taken away, and the part fomented twice or thrice a-day, applying over it a poultice made of *oat-meal*, *oil* and *vinegar*, which should be continued till the swelling grows soft and easier, or the gut is returned. In the mean time, it would be proper to throw emollient oily *glisters* twice a-day, and to let the horse's chief diet be boiled *barley*, scalded *malt*, or *bran*.

Should the swelling afterwards return, we apprehend an ingenious mechanic in that art ought to be employed in making a suspensary bandage, so that he is chiefly to be relied on for any future assistance; though it has been observed, that with moderate feeding, and gentle exercise, some horses have continued to be very useful under this complaint.



### ANTICOR.

*To cure the Anticor.*

THE cure should be first attempted by large and repeated bleedings, to abate the inflammation; emollient *glisters* should be injected twice or thrice a day, with an acid of *sal prunella* in each, and a cooling drink, should be given inwardly: the swelling should be bathed with the *marsh-mallow* ointment; and a ripening poultice, with *onions* boiled in it, should be applied over it. If by this method, continued four or five days, the inflammation in the throat and gullet is removed, our attention should more particularly



turn to encourage the swelling at the breast, and bring it, if possible to matter: to which end, continue the poultice, and give two ounces of *venice treacle* dissolved in a pint of *beer* every night; when the swelling is grown soft, it must be opened with a knife, and dressed with the turpentine digestive, the danger now being over.

But should it be found impracticable to bring the swelling to matter, and it increases upwards, so as to endanger suffocation, authors have advised to pierce the tumor with a hot pointed cautery in five or six places; to dress with the above digestive; and, in order to stimulate and promote a greater discharge, to add to it a small quantity of *Spanish flies* and *euphorbium* in powder; fomenting at the same time, and bathing the circumjacent parts with ointment of *marsh-mallows*. M. Gueriniere, as well as Soleysel, have advised opening the skin, when the tumor cannot be brought to matter, in order to introduce a piece of black *helli-bore-root* steeped in *vinegar*, and to confine it there for twenty-four hours: this also is intended as a stimulate; and is said to answer the intention, by occasioning sometimes a swelling as big as a man's head.

Besides the disorder of the mouth, which we have frequently observed, on the inside the lips and palate, little swellings or bladders called *giggs*. Slitting them open with a knife or lancet, and washing them afterwards with *salt* and *vinegar*, is in general their cure: but when they degenerate into what is called *cankers*, which are known by little white specks, that spread and occasion irregular ulcers, the best method then is to touch them daily with a small



flat cautery, moderately heated till the spread is stopped, and to rub the sore three or four times a day with *Ægyptiacum*, and tincture of *myrrh*, sharpened with oil or spirit of *vitriol*; when by this dressing the slaughs are separated, they may be worked frequently with a sponge dipped in *copperas*, or *sublimate water*, if they continue to spread; or a tincture made by dissolving half an ounce of burnt *allum*, and two ounces of *honey*, in a pint of tincture of *roses*. Either of these will dry them up, and are very useful in most disorders of the mouth.

A relaxation or swelling on the palate sometimes happens to horses on catching cold. To remedy this disorder, blow *pepper* on the part, and anoint it with the same, mixed up with *honey*. The tincture above mentioned may be useful for this purpose, to which may be added half an ounce of spirit of *sal-armoniac*.



### COLT-EVIL.

THIS may often be removed by washing the part clean with *beer* and *bitter*; but when the yard itself is swelled, foment it twice a day with *marsh-mallows* boiled in *milk*, to which may be added a little spirit of *wine*; anoint the excoriation with the *white ointment*, or wash it with a sponge dipped in *lime*, to a pint of which may be added two drachms of *sugar of lead*; the yard should be suspended up to the belly; and if the swelling should increase with the inflammation, bleed, and give a cooling physic, anoint with ointment of *elder*, and apply a *bread and milk* poultice.



## FALSE-QUARTER.

IN this case, the hard parts of the hoof are to be removed, a digestive poultice applied, and when the inflammation is abated, the proud flesh may be touched with the following corrosive powder.

Take blue *vitriol* burnt, two drams ; corrosive *sublimate*, one drachm; rubbed into powder.



## WOLVE's-TEETH.

TO remedy this evil, you may either chop off the superfluous parts of the teeth with a chissel and mallet, or file them down, which is the better way, till you have sufficiently wasted them.



## WARBLES.

ON the first appearance, or earliest discovery, bathe three or four times a day with the following repellent: *extract* of *saturn* half an ounce, camphorated *spirit* of *wine* two ounces, *soft water* a quarter of a pint; the extract and spirit being well mixed by shaking, before adding the water.



## FARCY &amp; FRUSH,—TO CURE THE.

TAKE half an ounce of Roman *vitriol* boiled in a pint of *urine*, two-pence worth of *turpentine*, two-pence worth of *bole-armoniac*, and a handful of *rue*. Give inwardly and repeat the *dosè*, if requisite.







A DESCRIPTION  
OF THE  
*Nature and Progress of Diseases ;*  
FORMING AN INTERESTING  
APPENDIX.

---

### Lampas.

The lampas is an excrescence in the roof of the horse's mouth, which is sometimes so luxuriant, that it grows above the teeth, and hinders his feeding.

### Barbes

Are small excrescences under the tongue, which may be discovered by drawing it aside.

### Wolve's-teeth.

When the teeth grows in such a manner, that their points prick or wound either the tongue or gums in eating. Old horses are most liable to this infirmity, and whose upper overshoot the under teeth in a great degree.

### Wind-galls.

A wind-gall is a flatulent swelling, which yields to the pressure of the finger, and recovers its shape by the removal thereof; the tumor is visible to the eye, and often seated on both sides of the neck-sinew, above the fet-



locks, on the fore-legs, but most frequently on the hind-legs; though they are met with in various parts of the body, wherever membranes can be so separated, that a quantity of air and serosities may be included within their duplicatures.

When they appear near to the joints and tendons, they are generally caused by strains or bruises on the sinews, or the sheath that covers them; which, by being overstretched, have some of their fibres ruptured; whence probably may ouze out that fluid which is commonly found with the included air: though, where the swellings shew themselves in the interstices of large muscles, which appear blown up like bladders, air alone is the chief fluid.

### Poll-evil.

The poll-evil is an abscess near the poll of a horse, formed in the sinews between the poll-bone and the upper vertebræ of the neck.

### Splents.

These are hard excrescences that grow on the shank-bone, and are of various shapes and sizes. Some horses are more subject to splents than others; but young horses are most liable to these infirmities, which often wear off and disappear of themselves. Few horses put out splents after they are seven or eight years old, unless they meet with blows and accidents.

A splent that arises in the middle of the shank-bone is no wise dangerous; but those that arise on the back part of this bone, when they grow large and press against the back sinew, always cause lameness or stiffness, by rubbing against it: the others, except they are



situated near the joints, seldom occasion lameness.

## Disorders of the Kidneys and Bladder.

The signs of the kidneys being hurt or affected are, a weakness of the back and loins, difficulty of staling, faintness, loss of appetite, and deadness in the eyes; the urine is thick, foul, and sometimes bloody, especially after a violent strain. A horse diseased in his kidneys can seldom *back*, that is, move straight backwards, without pain, which is visible as often as he is put to the trial; the same thing is observable indeed in horses whose backs have been wrung and wrenched; but with this difference, that in the latter there is seldom any defect or alteration in the urine, except that it is higher coloured.

### Molten Grease.

By molten grease is meant a fat or oily discharge with the dung; and it arises from a colicquation or melting down of the fat of a horse's body by violent exercise in very hot weather. It is always attended with a fever, heat, restlessness, starting and tremblings, great inward sickness, shortness of breath, and sometimes with the symptoms of a pleurisy. His dung will be extremely greasy, and he will fall into a scouring; his blood will have a thick skin or fat over it when cold, of a white or yellow hue, but chiefly the latter; the congealed part or sediment is commonly a mixture of size and grease, which makes it so extremely slippery, that it will not adhere to the fingers, and a small portion of srum feels very slippery and



clammy. The horse soon looses his flesh and fat, which probably is dissolved and absorbed into the blood; and those that survive this shock grow hide-bound for a time, their legs swelling both before and behind, and continue in this state till the blood and juices are rectified; and if this is not done effectually, the farcy or some obstinate surfeit generally follows, very difficult to remove.

### Hide-bound.

The signs of *hide-bound* are, a want of flexibility in the skin, which is pervaded by a general stiffness that seems to form an entire adhesion to the flesh, without the least partial separation or destination. There is a kind of dusty scurf, plainly perceived underneath the hair, that raises it up in different parts; and, giving it another hue, the coat in many places forms an appearance of two or three colours; conveying, even in this trifling circumstance, a very forcible idea of poverty in both food and raiment. The horse is generally languid, dull, heavy and weak: his excrement is dark, foul, and offensive; he sweats much upon very moderate exertions; then his coat stares, the hair turns different ways (which in its effluvia is disagreeable,) and affords evident proof of weakness and debilitation.

### Farcin, or Farcy.

The true farcy is properly a disorder of the blood vessels and their contained fluid; by which, when inveterate, the coats and integuments are so thickened that they become like so many cords.



At first, once or more, small swellings, or round buds like grapes or berries, spring out over the veins, and are often exquisitely painful to the touch: in the beginning they are hard, but soon turn into soft blisters, which when broke discharge an oily or bloody ichor, and turn into very foul and ill-disposed ulcers. In some horses it appears on the head only; in some on the external jugular; in others on the plate-vein, and runs downwards on the inside of the fore-arm, towards the knee, and very often upwards towards the brisket: in some the farcy shews itself on the hinder parts, above the pasterns, and along the large veins on the inside of the thigh, rising upwards into the groin, and towards the sheath; and sometimes it makes its appearance on the flanks, and spreads by degrees towards the lower belly, where it often becomes very troublesome.

### Curb.

As a spavin rises among the bones on the fore part of the hocks, so a curb takes its origin from the junctures of the same bones, and rises on the hinder parts, forming a pretty large tumor over the back part of the hind-leg, attended with stiffness, and sometimes with pain and lameness.

### Crown Scab

Is a humor that breaks out round the coronet, which is very sharp and itching, and attended with a scurfiness.

### Rat-tails

Are excrescences which creep from the pastern to the middle of the shanks, and are so



called by the resemblance they bear to the tail of a rat. Some are moist, and others dry.

## Ruptures.

In regard to ruptures, though they are generally divided into particular classes, we shall observe that violent efforts of the horse, or other accidents, the guts or caul may be forced between the muscles of the belly at the navel, and through the rings of the muscles into the scrotum or cod. The swellings are generally about the size of a man's fist, sometimes much larger, descending to the very hook: they are frequently soft, and yield to the pressure of the hand, when they will return into the cavity of the belly with a rumbling noise: and, in most, the vacuity may be felt through which they passed.

## Anticor

Is a disorder not very common among our horses, or those in northern climates; but is particularly taken notice of by the French, Spanish, and Italian writers; who describe it a malignant swelling in the breast, which extends sometimes to the very sheath under the belly; it is attended with a fever, great depression and weakness, and a total loss of appetite.

## Colt-evil.

The colt-evil is supposed to arise from stoned colts having full liberty with mares, before they are able to cover them; whence frequently ensues an excoriation or fretting in the glands, and a swelling on the sheath. This disorder frequently breeds from dirt or filth lodging there.



## Disease in the Feet, commonly called Founder.

The term *foundered* is generally applied to lame horses in a very vague manner, and without any determined or fixed meaning: for, when a horse shews any defect or impediment in moving his fore-feet, he is then pronounced to be foundered, whether he really has been so or not; that is, according to what is commonly understood by that term, owing to the want or neglect of not making proper distinctions of the different diseases of the feet. If we consult authors, who have treated on this subject, we shall find their accounts of it very dark and imperfect; they bewilder the reader, and convey but a very indistinct idea of the nature of the disease: hence many errors are committed in practice, to the destruction of a number of valuable horses, which otherwise, by proper management, might have been rendered useful. When a horse is attacked with this disorder, he shews a great restlessness, is hot and feverish, heaves much at the flanks, breathes quick, has a quick strong pulse, and groans much when moved about; at the same time he shews symptoms of the most violent pain. Sometimes in one, but most frequently in both fore-feet; for which reason, he lies down much; but, when forced to move forwards, he draws himself together, as it were into a heap, by bringing forward his hind-feet almost under his shoulders, in order to keep the weight of his body as much as possible from resting upon his fore-feet. In stepping forward, he sets his heel down first with great caution, as afraid of touching the ground.



This last symptom should be particularly attended to, as from it we may conclude with certainty, that the chief seat of the disease is in the feet. The hoofs at the same time are exceedingly hot; and, if water is thrown upon them, they dry instantly: if an attempt is made to pull off any of the shoes, the horse shews great uneasiness upon the least twist or pressure made upon any part of the foot, especially when they are both alike affected.

## Consumption.

When a consumption proceeds from a defect in a horse's lungs or any principal bowel, the eyes look dull, the ears and feet are mostly hot; he coughs sharply by fits; sneezes much, and frequently groans with it; his flanks have a quick motion: he gleans often at the nose, and sometimes throws out a yellowish cruddled matter; and he has little appetite to hay, but will eat corn, after which he generally grows hot.

## Apoplexy or Staggers.

Farriers generally include all distempers of the head under two denominations, viz. *staggers* and *convulsions*, wherein they always suppose the head principally affected. In an apoplexy a horse drops down suddenly, without other sense or motion than a working at his flanks. The previous symptoms are, drowsiness, watery eyes, somewhat full and inflamed, a disposition to reel, feebleness, a bad appetite, the head almost constantly hanging, or resting on the manger, sometimes with little or no fever, and scarce any alteration in the dung or urine; the horse is sometimes dis-



posed to rear up, and apt to fall back when handled about the head; which is often the case with young horses, to which it does not suddenly prove mortal.

### Strangles.

The strangles is a distemper to which colts and young horses are very subject. The symptoms and progress of this disease are as follows: A dull heaviness and inactivity, loss of appetite, and a hollow, husky cough, occasioned by the irritability of the inflamed glandular parts of the throat, and about the root of the tongue. To excite a degree of moisture in the mouth that may allay this disagreeable sensation, the horse is often pricking his hay, but eats little or none; a degree of symptomatic heat comes on, and a constant clamminess and thirst is perceptible. As the distemper advances, he becomes proportionally languid and inactive: a swelling (with sometimes two or three smaller surrounding it) is now discovered to have formed itself between the jaw-bones, which is at first very hard, exceeding painful and visibly increasing; he now swallows with difficulty, heaving in the flanks, and his whole appearance gives signs of the greatest distress.

### Glanders.

There are seven different sorts of glanders. But what is called the *real glanders*, the discharge is either white, yellow, or greenish; sometimes streaked or tinged with blood. When the disease is of long standing, and the bones are fouled, the matter turns blackish, and becomes very fœtid; and is always attended with a swelling of the kernels or glands un-



der the jaws ; in every other respect the horse is generally healthy and sound, till the distemper has been of some continuance.

## Yellows, or Jaundice.

Horses are frequently subject to this distemper ; which is known by a dusty yellowness of the eyes ; the inside of the mouth and lips, the tongue and bars of the roof of the mouth, looking also yellow. The horse is dull, and refuses all manner of food ; the fever is slow, yet both that and the yellowness increase together. The dung is often hard and dry, of a pale yellow, or light pale green. His urine is commonly of a dark dirty brown colour ; and when it has settled some time on the pavement, it looks red like blood. He stales with some pain and difficulty, and if the distemper is not checked soon, grows delirious and frantic. The off side of the belly is sometimes hard and distended ; and in old horses, when the liver has been long diseased, the cure is not practicable, and ends fatally with a wasting diarrhœa : but when the distemper is recent, and in young horses there is no fear of a recovery.

## Hoof-bound.

This complaint affects the hoofs differently, according to their natural shape, and the treatment they are exposed to, whether from injudicious shoeing, keeping the hoofs too hot and dry, or paring the sole and binders at every time they are shod. Some are affected with a circular contraction of the crust, compressing the whole foot. In others, the crust is contracted at the coronet only, compressing



the annular ligament, &c. A third kind is when either one or both heels are contracted; hence, therefore, in proportion to the degree of contraction, the internal parts of the foot are compressed, and the horse becomes more or less lame.

It has been already observed, that deep crusted narrow hoofs, or what are commonly called *asses hoofs*, are naturally disposed to this malady: when they become, they are easily known from their appearance, as they are smaller in proportion than the legs, and frequently smaller in their basis than at the coronet; the crust of the heels is high, thick and strong; the frog wasted and rotten; the hoofs are almost perpendicular; the horse moves in pain, steps short and quick, and trips and stumbles frequently; it is not common that one foot only is affected, which then appears considerably smaller than the other.

This disease is hastened and brought on by paring and hollowing out the sole and binders at every time the shoes are renewed, from a mistaken notion of widening the heels; hence they are thereby made so very thin, that the crust at the extremity of the heels may be forced almost close to one another even with one's fingers: and what greatly forwards the complaint, is the form of the shoes commonly used, which are made hollow; for this practice of hollowing the shoes so universally prevails, that, without any regard to the shape of the sole, whether it be flat or otherwise, the shoe is made concave or hollow upon that side which is placed next the foot. Hence the outer edges of the concave shoes force the crusts of the heels nearer to one another.



which being there retained, the contraction of the hoof becomes general, and confirmed beyond the power of art or remedy.

In the second space of this complaint, the hoof acquires a particular shape, which Mr. Gibsom in his farriery, compares that of a bell, that is, the hoof appears contracted and tight round the coronet and instep, but spreads wider downwards to its basis: the hoof in other respects looks well and sound. This is generally occasioned by keeping the horse standing for a long time together in the stable upon hot dry litter, without moistening and cooling the hoofs, allowing them at the same time to grow to a prematural size both in length and breadth—hence from the great strength, the rigidity and dryness of the under part of the hoof, a preternatural stricture or pressure is made by the hardened crust at the coronet, which compresses the amular ligament and parts near it.

### Epilepsy, or Falling-sickness.

In an epilepsy, or falling-sickness, the horse rubs and staggers, his eyes are fixed in his head, he has no sense of what he is doing, he stales and dungs insensibly, he runs round and falls suddenly: sometimes he is immovable, with his legs stretched out as if he were dead, except only a quick motion of his heart and lungs, which causes a violent working in his flanks; sometimes he has involuntary motions, and shaking of his limbs, so strong that he has not only beat and spurned his litter, but the pavements with it; and with these alternate symptoms a horse has continued more than three hours, and then has as surprisingly recovered at the going off of the fit, he gene-



rally foams at the mouth, the foam being white and dry, like what comes from a healthful horse when he champs on the bit.

## Lethargy.

In lethargic disorders, the horse generally rests his head with his mouth in the manger, and his pole often reclined on one side ; he will shew an inclination to eat, but generally falls asleep with his food in his mouth, and he frequently swallows it whole without chewing.

## Corns.

In the human body, corns in the feet are termed so with some propriety, from their horny substance ; but what are called *corns* in the feet of horses, are very improperly named, as they are quite of an opposite nature, rather resembling contusions or bruises, and not unlike those bruises which happen in the palms of the hands and fingers of working people, arising from violent pitching, bruising, &c. where the skin is thick, which appears of a blackish red colour, and exceedingly painful in the first containing fluid : but in the end, the serum or thinner parts being absorbed, the red particles appear when the dead skin is removed, like red powder. In like manner corns, or rather bruises, appear red and *foxy*, as the phrase is. They are situated in the corner or sharp angle of the sole of the extremity of the heels, where the crust reflects inward and forward, forming the binders. But they are now frequently to be met with in the inside heel, from the manner of the horse's standing, together with the pressure or weight of the body, which is greater upon the inside of the hoof



than the outside. Bruises of this kind are exceedingly painful, insomuch that the horse shrinks and stumbles when any thing touches or presses upon that quarter of the hoof ; hence lameness.

This complaint arises from different causes, according to the shape or natural formation of the hoof, together with the treatment they are exposed to. But the following are the most frequent.

In flat low heels, from too great a pressure of the shoe-heel upon the sole, whether from cankers, a too great thickness of iron upon the heels of the shoe, or its being bended downwards upon the sole, or the shoe made too concave ; either of these causes will produce the same effect ; for, from the too great pressure upon the horny sole, the fleshy sole which lies immediately underneath it, is compressed and bruised between the shoe-heel, the sole, and the extremities or outward pains of the coffin-bones ; and hence a contusion or bruise, attended with an extravation of the blood, which afterwards gives that part of the sole a red appearance, and is the reason why the sole on that place never grows up so firm and solid as it was before, but remains soft and spongy, forming a lodgment for sand and gravel, which frequently insinuates itself into the quick, causing an inflammation attended with a suppuration or discharge of matter, which, if not finding a passage below, will break out at the coronet.

This complaint is produced in wide open heels, when the hoofs are very thick and strong, from too great a luxuriance of the binder, which being inflected or bended downwards,



between the shoe and the sole, compresses the fleshy sole, as already mentioned; and hence lameness.

This malady, in deep narrow hoofs, proceeds from a contraction of the crust compressing the heels, &c. Hence, it not unfrequently happens that in hoofs of this shape, that both heels are alike affected from the stricture and pressure of the hardened crust upon the tendinous aponcurasis, &c. on the outside of the coffin-bone, which in this case is bruised between the bone and the crust; hence the redness may sometimes be traced upwards almost to the coronet. In this case no radical cure can take place, as the causes which produces these bruises, &c. will exist while the horse lives, and at the same time the horse will be lame from the contraction of the hoof; but the remedy proposed in the preceding receipts, by way of palliation for hoof-bound feet, may be of use to render the horse in some measure more serviceable.

With respect to the two first causes, when that bruise proceeds from too great a pressure from the shoe-heels, &c. upon the sole, the shoe must be made so as to bear off the tender part, and likewise to some distance on both sides of it; for which, a round or a barred shoe will be necessary. The red and bruised parts must be cut out to the quick, and the hoof kept soft with emolent poultices for some time. But the texture of the blood vessels, and that likewise of the hoof at the bruised part, being destroyed, a spunginess remains afterwards, and upon the least unequal pressure from the shoe, &c. are liable to a re-



lapse, never admitting to a thorough cure, and of consequence subject to frequent lameness.

Corns or bruises in the feet of horses might, by taking proper care of them, be easily avoided: for in those countries where horses go mostly bare-footed, this malady is not so much as known; neither are those horses that go constantly at cart or plough subject: hence, therefore, this complaint is most frequently met with in great towns, where horses go much upon hard causeways, having their shoes turned up with high caukers on the heels, and frequently renewed, at the same time their hoofs being kept too dry and hard, from standing too much upon hot dry litter: hence in applying, what is most natural to the hoofs of horses, namely, coolness and moisture, together with using such a form of shoes as will press equally upon the circumference of the crust, and without giving it any bad unnatural shape.

### Surfeits.

According to Mr. Taplin, there are two kinds originating from different causes: one being no more than a very advanced stage of the case described; which being long neglected, all its symptoms increase, till the entire mass of blood being at last neglected, the virulence of the disorder displays itself upon the surface of the body.

The other kind of surfeit, differing from the former in cause, but very little in effect, is that where, from ignorance or inattention, a horse is suffered to drink immoderately of cold water, when in a violent perspiration, and the



blood consequently in the highest degree of circulation.

The circulating fluid being so instantaneously checked by the influence of the frigid element and the sudden contraction of the solids, the crasamentum becomes immediately thickened and inflamed, while the serum or water part, separating from the other, extravasates itself; and, by an effort of nature, is propelled to the skin for transpiration, while the pores, (having been instantly collapsed at the time of the water's taking effect) are so closely obstructed that its passage to the surface is rendered impracticable. In this situation it becomes united with the perspirable matter already confined there; and is, in the course of time, compelled by the progress of internal inflammation to make its way through the skin—upon which it at last appears under a variety of forms and different symptoms, assuming distinct degrees of malignity, according to the state, habit and constitution of the subject at the time of the attack.

### Vives, or Ives.

The vives or ives differ from the strangles only in this, that the swellings of the kernels seldom come to matter.

When these swellings appear in an old or full-aged horse, they are signs of great malignity, and often of an inward decay, as well as forerunners of the glanders.

### Mange

Is a distemper so universally known as to render a particular description unnecessary. It proceeds chiefly from poor feeding: hence



it is very little seen amongst horses of any estimation; but is almost entirely confined to the lower class of the stables and proprietors.

In a mangy horse the skin is generally tawny, thick and full of wrinkles, especially about the mane, the loins and tail; and the little hair that remains on those parts, stands almost always straight out or bristly; the ears are commonly naked and without hair, the eye and eye-brows the same aspect: yet the skin is not raw, nor peels off, as in the surfeit.

### Bruises on the Withers,

Frequently imposthumate, and for want of care turn fistulas. They arise often from pinches of the saddle, and should be treated with repel.

### Warbles

Are small hard tumors under the saddle-part of the horse's back, occasioned by the heat of the saddle in travelling or its uneasy situation. As soon as the saddle is taken off after a severe journey, you may easily discover whether the horse has been injured by his wincing.

### Set-fast

Proceeds generally from a warble, and is the horses hide turned horny or callous. In some little time the hair comes off, and it bears the appearance of a foreign solid surface, fixed in the centre of what seems to be a superficial wound. For this simple and trifling complaint there is but one certain and expeditious cure.



## Running Thrushes.

A running thrush (a frush) is a discharge of a fetid, and sometimes icharous, matter, from the cleft in the middle of the frog, affecting one, frequently both, and in some cases all the four feet. But, generally, the fore-feet are most subject to this disease. In most cases it seldom admits of a radical cure; but is subject to frequent relapses, occasioning lameness, from the rawness and tenderness of the part affected, on being exposed to sand, gravel, &c. or in rough grounds from the heels treading on sharp stones, &c. and where the horse happens to be of a bad habit of body, they even degenerate into what is commonly called a *canker*.

Running thrushes, according to Mr. Gibson, “are sometimes profitable to horses of fleshy and foul constitutions; because (says he) they drain off a great many bad humors.” But however salutary or beneficial they may be in some particular constitutions, yet upon the whole they prove extremely troublesome, on account of the lameness and tenderness of the foot affected with them; and, where there occurs one case in which they may properly be said to be beneficial to the constitution, there are a far greater number in which they are hurtful, as they are brought on by the treatment the hoofs are exposed to. Together with the injudicious method generally observed in shoeing them, particularly in those hoofs that are narrow-heeled, or disposed to be hoof-bound, running thrushes being always an attendant upon that complaint. But to explain these more particularly, there is in the middle of the frog, a



cleft or opening, by which the heel in a natural state has a small degree of contraction and expansion, especially when the horse treads or presses his heel upon the ground, the frog then expands; when, therefore, a horse is shod with concave or hollow shoes, the heels are deprived of that power of expansion, being constantly confined in a contracted state by the resistance from the outer edges of the concave shoe, by which the frog is pressed or squeezed on both sides, by the crust of the heels being brought nearer to or almost into contact with one another. Hence pain, inflammation of the blood, &c. (in the fleshy substance of the frog,) and of course that wasting and rottenness of its external covering, which, falling off in pieces, leaves the quick almost bare, the new frog growing in detached pieces, never acquire the solidity of the former; and hence that rawness and tenderness which ever afterwards, and that extreme sensibility of pain when any hard substance touches that part of the foot, and of course subject the horse to frequent lameness. There is no doubt, other causes which may be said to occasion this malady, even in those hoofs that are wide and open at the heels, where there is not the least appearance of a contraction at the heels: but these are generally owing to the treatment the hoofs are exposed to in the stable, by keeping them too hot and dry for a long tract of time together, during which the natural perspiration is greatly obstructed, by the constant application of grease or oil to the hardened hoofs, and stuffing them up with hot, rosinous and greasy mixtures, as tallow, turpentine, &c. the horse being all the while kept at full feeding, and



not having proper and necessary exercise to promote the circulation of the fluids, and to forward the ordinary secretions, &c. the legs swell and inflame; at least the running in the frog appears; and hence this discharge is said to be beneficial to the constitution, when in fact it is brought on by a slothful neglect and kept up by bad management. Fresh air and regular exercise are essentially necessary towards preserving horses in an active healthy state; for running thrushes, like other diseases to which pampered horses are subject, are not known in those countries where horses run at large in the fields; neither are they to be so frequently met with in the country amongst laboring horses, whose exercise is regular, and whose hoofs are much exposed to coolness and moisture, the natural state of the feet of horses.

In some cases, there is frequently not only a discharge of fetid matter from the clefts of the frogs; but, at the same time, a discharge of guary-like matter from the round protuberances of the heels, and the hollow of the pastern joints. It will therefore be necessary to make a distinction between the matter discharged in this case, which appears of a thick, white, clammy, or soapy consistence, and that running in the legs commonly termed a *grease*, which is of a quite opposite quality; the latter by good management will admit of a thorough cure, whilst the former baffles all the power of medicine.

In horses of a gross habit of body, especially the heavy draught-kind, running thrushes sometimes degenerate into what is commonly called a *canker*. In this case the horny substance of the frog is soon thrown off; the



fleshy parts grow to an immoderate size, the luxuriant substance or spongy flesh having a fresh number of papilla or tubercles, which Mr. Gibson compares not improperly to cauliflowers, the colour only excepted, which is only of a pale red, and sometimes variegated and tinged with blood, attended with a copious discharge of a thin icharous fetid humor, having a most offensive smell. If its progress be not speedily stopped, the fleshy sole, from its vicinity, becomes likewise affected; the horny sole rots, decays, and falls off: the whole foot turns into a kind of quag or bog (in warm weather full of maggots, which it is almost impossible to prevent, even with the most corrosive dressings,) the tendons become likewise affected, the bones curious, the hoof falls off, and the horse is rendered useless. To prevent these and the like consequences, as soon as a running thrush does shew the least malignant disposition, proper means must be used to correct the habit of body, and to divert this discharge by some other outlet, either by purging or diuretic remedies, continued for some time.

### Quitterbone.

This tumor is attended with great pain and inflammation, and a considerable swelling round its basis.

### Ringbone.

Is a hard swelling on the lower part of the pastern, which generally raises half way round the fore-part thereof, and from its resemblance to a ring has its denomination. It often arises from strains, &c. and when behind from put-



ting your horse too early upon their haunches ; for in that attitude a horse throws his whole weight as much, if not more, upon his pasterns, than on his heels.

When it appears distinctly round the pastern, and does not run downwards towards the coronet, so as to affect the coffin-joint, it is easily cured : but if it takes its origin from some strain or defect in the joint originally, or if a calosity is found under the round ligament that cover that joint, the cure is generally dubious, and sometimes impracticable ; or it is apt to turn to a quitter, and in the end to form an ulcer upon the hoof.

The ring-bones that appear on colts and young horses, will often insensibly wear off themselves, without the help of any application.

### False-quarter.

What is commonly called *false-quarter* in the hoof of an horse, is a cleft or chink in the side or quarter of the hoof, running in a slanting direction with the horny fibres of the hoof, from the coronet to its basis, by which the horny substance of the crust is divided ; one part of the hoof being in a manner detached from the other, and rendered unable to restrain its portion or share of the weight of the limbs, &c. and hence the name of *false-quarter* : for, when the horse rests his foot on the ground, the chink widens ; but, when it is lifted up, the hardened edges of the divided hoof takes in between them the under and soft parts, and squeeze them so as to occasion frequent bleeding at the chink, and is frequently



attended with inflammation, a discharge of matter, and of course lameness.

This complaint, notwithstanding the different accounts commonly given as to the cause of it, is in fact the effect of a deep wound or bruise upon the coronet, by which the continuity of the part has been entirely broken off: for we always find, that when the horny fibres are divided at their roots, they never unite or grow up as before, but leave a blemish, more or less, in proportion to the size and deepness of such wound, &c. We have many instances of this, even in the human body; for when a wound happens in the roots of the nails, whether in the fingers or toes, it occasions a blemish, which continues to grow in the same manner afterwards. Hence it will be evident, that no radical cure can possibly take place; but we may so far palliate the complaint as to render the horse something useful, by using a shoe of such a construction as will support the weight of the limbs, &c. without resting or pressing too much upon the weakened quarter; for which purchase, or round, or what is called a *barred shoe*, will be most proper. The surface of the hoof on and near the diseased part may be cut down lower than the surface of the crust upon which the shoe is to rest; or, if the hoof will not admit of being cut down, the shoe may be raised up from the weak quarter. Either of these means will remove the weight of the body from the diseased part, and the horse will go sounder.

But as sand and gravel is easily admitted into the chink or crack, where, being accumulated and pent up, it irritates and inflames the parts, whereby matter is found underneath



the foot, which causes lameness, and which not unfrequently breaks out at the coronet, produces the most inveterate ulcers, which becomes extremely difficult to heal, on account of the sinews or fistula branching out in different directions underneath the hoof: therefore, horses with this defect should be carefully observed: and, when the thick hardened edge of the chink or crack grows too high, by which it is so much the deeper, and, of course, lodges the greater quantity of sand, &c. These edges should be rasped or pared with a crooked knife, till the seam disappears. But wherever there remains a blackness, or appearance of gravel, that part must be tracked farther; always observing, if possible, to avoid drawing of blood. The chink or crack thus made smooth and equal, no sand or gravel can lodge in it; and as the parts will be tender, it will be necessary to apply an emollient poultice for some days, till the tenderness wears off. If the inflammation has been great, and matter formed in the crack, or the part wounded by the knife in cutting its hardened edges, proud flesh may arise and jil out. In this case, the hard parts of the hoof near it are to be removed, by digestive poultice applied; and when the inflammation is abated, then the proud flesh may be destroyed.

### Sand-crack

Is of much the same nature with a false-quarter; only they run more frequently in an horizontal direction than the latter, on the outside or surface of the crust: they are generally the effect of slight or superficial wounds from the coronet, and grow gradually down-



wards towards the basis of the hoof, and at last are cut or rasped off in the shoeing; when they occasion lameness from lodging sand or gravel, they must be treated in the same manner as the false-quarter.

## Horses cutting their Legs in Travelling.

Horses frequently cut their legs both before and behind, by striking or knocking the foot when trotting, &c. against the opposite leg, whereby a wound is made, which is attended with an inflammation, swelling, &c. and of course lameness. The parts commonly wounded from cutting in the fore-legs, are the prominent and back part of the fetlock-joint; and under the knee joint on the inside of the leg. The former is most common: the latter only happens to those horses who raise their feet high in trotting: and as such horses generally go fast, this last species of cutting is distinguished by the name of *swift or speedy cut*.

In the hind legs, horses cut themselves upon the prominent part of the fetlock; and sometime, especially those who move their legs too low, cut upon their coronet. But whether they cut before or behind, it commonly proceeds from some of the following causes.

Injudicious shoeing, under which may be included, the hoof being suffered to grow too large and broad, the shoe projecting over the inside edge of the hoof, the clinches or rivets of the nails rising above the surface of the crust.

There are a great variety of shoes recommended for preventing this complaint, of dif-



ferent constructions : but the most common are those that are made thick upon the inside heel. Others have a border or margin turned up upon the inside of the shoe's rim, commonly called a *feather*, which raises the inside of the hoof considerably higher from the ground than the outside. Either of these shoes may be of use to a dealer to make a wry-footed horse appear to stand straight upon his limbs ; but can have no effect upon a horse's manner of moving his legs, especially at the time when the foot is raised from the ground, and passing by the other leg, so as to prevent him from cutting. The reason why this method of shoeing seems to succeed, especially in the hind-feet, is this ; when the shoe is made thick upon the inside heel, which part commonly strikes the opposite leg, the shoe-nails are removed to a considerable distance forward from the thick part of the shoe, which, at the same time, is kept much within the circle of the hoof ; and, on that account, it becomes impossible that the shoe should touch the opposite leg.

N. B. To shew that this raising of the inside quarter or heels, by a thickness of rim in the shoe, is not necessary to prevent horses from cutting, the author has frequently caused the heel of the shoe to be made thinner than common ; and, by keeping it within the hoof, it answered equally well with the former ; he has likewise caused the shoe to be cut in the middle of the quarter, whereby the hoof at the heel was left quite bare ; which answered the purpose so much the better, as the foot was the less loaded with the additional weight of superfluous iron.



The great weight of the concave shoes commonly used, is likewise another cause why horses, that in other respects move well upon their legs, do frequently cut and wound themselves, and to this we may add, the great length of the hoof at the toe, especially in the forefeet, which is allowed frequently to grow to an unnatural size. It has been already said, that a great load of iron is by no means necessary in a horse's shoe : on the contrary, it becomes a great disadvantage ; for a flat one, that is properly constructed, and well wrought, that is, well hammered, will wear as long as a concave or hollow shoe that is almost double the weight of the former. This, at first view, will perhaps appear a paradox ; but, nevertheless, it is a fact ; for as the round or outward surface of a concave shoe is the only part that touches the ground, and is liable to be worn, it soon grows thin, and yields to the pressure from the weight of the body ; and therefore must be renewed before the other parts of it are hardly touched, and but little reduced in its original weight ; but the surface of a flat shoe, resting equally upon the ground, will remain firm upon the hoof, and be sufficiently strong to support the weight of the body till it wears very thin.

When horses cut or wound themselves immediately under the knee joint, this is called the *swift* or *speedy cut* ; and is occasioned by raising the feet high in trotting, whereby the inside toe or quarter of the hoof strikes against the opposite leg. This is easily prevented by making the shoe straight, and placing it considerably within the hoof of the part where the shoe strikes the other leg, observing that no



nails are to be put in that part of the shoe which is kept so much within the hoof, they must immediately plunge within the quick.

When cutting prouds from a natural defect, that is, a wrong position of the foot upon the leg-bones, whereby the toes are turned too much outward or too much inward, at the same time, if the horse crosses his legs much in trotting, in this case there is no preventing his cutting altogether, though it may be palliated. Such horses are by no means fit for journey-riding, being generally addicted both to cutting and stumbling.

In the last place, it may proceed from fatigue or weakness. This happens frequently, even to those horses that deal their legs well (as the phrase is) especially in young horses; but they soon leave it off when they acquire more strength, and are accustomed to their work: most people must have experienced this in themselves when boys, as they at that age are very ready to knock with the heel of the opposite shoe, which custom wears off as they grow strong. Upon the whole, the best general rule can be laid down for preventing horses from cutting their legs, is to keep their hoofs round and sharp at the toe, and from growing too large and broad; to observe that the shoe does not project over the inside edge of the hoof, that the clenches or rivets of the nails on the outer surface of the crust are smooth; and, above all, that the shoe be made tight, well worked, and properly proportioned to the size of the foot.

## Mallenders and Sallenders.

Mallenders are cracks in the bend of the horse's knee, that discharge a sharp indigested



matter ; they are often the occasion of lameness, stiffness, and the horse's tumbling.

Sallenders are the same distemper, situated on the bending of the hoch, and occasion a lameness behind.

## Blood-spavin

Is a swelling and dilatation of the vein that runs along the inside of the hoch, forming a little soft swelling in the hollow part, and is often attended with a weakness and lameness of the back.

## Bog-spavin

Is an encysted tumor on the inside of the hoch ; according to Dr. Brackney, a collection of brownish gelatinous matter, contained in a bag or cyst, which he thinks to be the lubricating matter of the joint altered, the common membranes that inclose it forming a cyst. This case he has taken the pains to illustrate in a young colt of his own, where he says, when the spavin was pressed hard on the inside the hoch, there was a small tumor on the outside, which convinced him the fluid was within-side the joint.



# INDEX.

## A.

|          | PAGE. |
|----------|-------|
| Apoplexy | 126   |
| do       | 188   |
| Anbury   | 157   |
| Anticor  | 234   |

## B.

|                                        |            |
|----------------------------------------|------------|
| Bleeding, observations on              | 135        |
| at the nose, to stop                   | 137        |
| at the nose or any wound, to stop      | 155        |
| at the nose, to stop                   | 50         |
| at the mouth, to stop                  | <i>ib.</i> |
| a vein to stop, or any other place     | 98         |
| Bones, out of joint                    | 220        |
| broken or out of joint                 | 66         |
| Barrenness in mares                    | 101        |
| in do                                  | 222        |
| Bathing decoction                      | 105        |
| Back swanckt in the fillet of the loin | 106        |
| swanckt                                | 179        |
| wrenched                               | 106        |
| Blindness if the ball is sound         | 110        |
| Botts                                  | 130        |
| do                                     | 122        |
| do                                     | <i>ib.</i> |
| do                                     | <i>ib.</i> |
| do                                     | 125        |
| do                                     | 133        |
| do                                     | 138        |



|                                                      | PAGE.      |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| do                                                   | 139        |
| do                                                   | 210        |
| do                                                   | 214        |
| do                                                   | 215        |
| do                                                   | 231        |
| Brittle hoofs                                        | 114        |
| do                                                   | 128        |
| do                                                   | 169        |
| do                                                   | 190        |
| Bite on the eye                                      | 115        |
| do                                                   | 170        |
| do                                                   | <i>ib.</i> |
| Broken vein or any inward member, to<br>conglutinate | 118        |
| Bloody-flux                                          | <i>ib.</i> |
| Botch in the groin                                   | 124        |
| do                                                   | 137        |
| Belly-ache                                           | 153        |
| do                                                   | 221        |
| Belly-bound                                          | 153        |
| Blood-shotten eyes                                   | <i>ib.</i> |
| Blood-rifts in the mouth                             | 155        |
| Barbs in the mouth                                   | <i>ib.</i> |
| Blow on the eye                                      | 170        |
| do                                                   | <i>ib.</i> |
| Bruises                                              | 205        |
| inward                                               | 171        |
| Broken-wind                                          | <i>ib.</i> |
| do                                                   | 202        |
| do                                                   | 217        |
| do                                                   | 230        |
| Blood-pissing                                        | 177        |
| Bruised cods                                         | 182        |
| Back sore                                            | 190        |
| do                                                   | 226        |
| Button-farcy                                         | 195        |



|                              | PAGE. |
|------------------------------|-------|
| Blood-spavin                 | 218   |
| Bite of a mad-dog or serpent | 221   |
| Broken bones.                | 223   |
| do or out of joint           | 66    |
| Breath, shortness of         | 230   |
| to give much                 | 59    |
| Bog-spavin                   | 233   |
| Bone-spavin                  | 104   |

C.

|                                                                                                             |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Cold                                                                                                        | 172 |
| do                                                                                                          | 214 |
| do                                                                                                          | 47  |
| do                                                                                                          | 109 |
| do                                                                                                          | 76  |
| do                                                                                                          | 115 |
| do                                                                                                          | 127 |
| with a violent cough                                                                                        | 77  |
| which causeth the nostrils to run<br>and produces knotted ker-<br>nels under the throat between<br>the jaws | 80  |
| produced by wind getting into a<br>wound                                                                    | 91  |
| which breaks out at the nose                                                                                | 210 |
| in a young horse                                                                                            | 223 |
| Cough                                                                                                       | 130 |
| do                                                                                                          | 230 |
| of the lungs                                                                                                | 51  |
| do                                                                                                          | 59  |
| or heaving of the lungs                                                                                     | 162 |
| Chine, mourning of the                                                                                      | 56  |
| do                                                                                                          | 125 |
| Canker, in the mouth                                                                                        | 62  |
| do                                                                                                          | 115 |
| do                                                                                                          | 200 |
| in the head                                                                                                 | 179 |



|                                               | PAGE.      |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------|
| or sore in any part of the body               | 131        |
| in the withers                                | 154        |
| in the nose or any part of the<br>body        | <i>ib.</i> |
| in the tongue                                 | 176        |
| Cankerous tumort                              | 123        |
| Coffin-joint, strain in the                   | 63         |
| Cut                                           | 205        |
| in the legs, commonly called the<br>Swift-cut | 64         |
| above the hoof                                | 71         |
| Crest, falling of the                         | 66         |
| Consumption in mares                          | 101        |
| of the liver                                  | 119        |
| Costiveness                                   | 109        |
| do                                            | 124        |
| Curb                                          | 111        |
| do                                            | 140        |
| do                                            | 218        |
| Crick in the neck                             | 117        |
| Cholic                                        | <i>ib.</i> |
| do                                            | 118        |
| do                                            | 231        |
| do                                            | 187        |
| Crown-scab                                    | 132        |
| Cramp                                         | 151        |
| Convulsion of sinews                          | <i>ib.</i> |
| Camery in the mouth                           | 155        |
| Cods bruised                                  | 182        |
| for a horse that pisses in the                | 193        |
| Cords                                         | 196        |
| Cracked heels                                 | 206        |
| Colts, gelding of                             | 221        |
| Cuts, broken                                  | 227        |
| Colt-evil                                     | 236        |



## D.

|                                       |   |   |   |            |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|---|------------|
| Dropsy                                | - | - | - | 100        |
| or evil habit of body                 | - | - | - | 138        |
| do                                    | - | - | - | <i>ib.</i> |
| Dimness of sight                      | - | - | - | 110        |
| Dim-eyes                              | - | - | - | 153        |
| Drenches and medicines for all inward |   |   |   |            |
| diseases and surfeits                 | - | - | - | 231        |
| do                                    | - | - | - | 232        |
| do                                    | - | - | - | <i>ib.</i> |
| do                                    | - | - | - | <i>ib.</i> |

## E.

|           |   |   |   |     |
|-----------|---|---|---|-----|
| Eye-water | - | - | - | 109 |
|-----------|---|---|---|-----|

## F.

|                                       |   |   |   |            |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|---|------------|
| Fainting                              | - | - | - | 47         |
| Fat, to make a horse                  | - | - | - | <i>ib.</i> |
| Febula                                | - | - | - | 50         |
| Farcion,                              | - | - | - | 120        |
| do                                    | - | - | - | 114        |
| do                                    | - | - | - | 122        |
| do                                    | - | - | - | 194        |
| do                                    | - | - | - | 237        |
| pocky                                 | - | - | - | 50         |
| that lies all over the body           | - | - | - | 82         |
| in the neck and head                  | - | - | - | 83         |
| water                                 | - | - | - | 194        |
| in the legs                           | - | - | - | <i>ib.</i> |
| button                                | - | - | - | 195        |
| do                                    | - | - | - | 201        |
| Fret, by some called Frettiz or Fret- |   |   |   |            |
| ting                                  | - | - | - | 57         |
| do                                    | - | - | - | 97         |
| do                                    | - | - | - | 112        |
| Foot or heel, stub in the             | - | - | - | 71         |



|                                    | PAGE.      |
|------------------------------------|------------|
| Festered foot - - -                | 72         |
| in shoeing - - -                   | <i>ib.</i> |
| Foal, for a mare that has cast her | 101        |
| do - - -                           | 124        |
| hardness to - - -                  | 101        |
| how to make a mare cast her        | <i>ib.</i> |
| Foundering - - -                   | 191        |
| of the feet - - -                  | 112        |
| do - - -                           | 129        |
| do - - -                           | 130        |
| of the body - - -                  | 129        |
| do - - -                           | 151        |
| Film in the eye - - -              | 113        |
| do - - -                           | 170        |
| do - - -                           | <i>ib.</i> |
| Flux, for the bloody - - -         | 118        |
| Fevers in general - - -            | 124        |
| Fistula - - -                      | 126        |
| do - - -                           | 154        |
| do - - -                           | 222        |
| do - - -                           | 224        |
| Foul stomach - - -                 | 125        |
| Falling-evil - - -                 | 126        |
| do - - -                           | 162        |
| Flaps in the mouth - - -           | 157        |
| Fundament fallen out - - -         | 159        |
| Furred or foul yard - - -          | 193        |
| Fig - - -                          | 216        |
| False-quarter - - -                | 229        |
| Frush, running of the - - -        | 237        |
| do - - -                           | 229        |

## G.

|                    |    |
|--------------------|----|
| Gourded legs - - - | 45 |
| Glanders - - -     | 47 |
| do - - -           | 56 |



## PAGE.

|                                                                                               |            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| do . . . . .                                                                                  | 113        |
| do . . . . .                                                                                  | 144        |
| do . . . . .                                                                                  | 213        |
| do . . . . .                                                                                  | 225        |
| Grease, molten . . . . .                                                                      | 47         |
| when a horse is sickby his . . . . .                                                          | 109        |
| fallen into the legs . . . . .                                                                | 49         |
| molten . . . . .                                                                              | 67         |
| Gripes . . . . .                                                                              | 69         |
| do . . . . .                                                                                  | 97         |
| Garget . . . . .                                                                              | 103        |
| Galled with a saddle or collar . . . . .                                                      | 120        |
| shoulders . . . . .                                                                           | 122        |
| Glisters, of . . . . .                                                                        | 163        |
| for a surfeit . . . . .                                                                       | 146        |
| for cholic or griping . . . . .                                                               | 150        |
| for body-bound . . . . .                                                                      | 165        |
| for do . . . . .                                                                              | <i>ib.</i> |
| to stop looseness . . . . .                                                                   | 166        |
| for a foul body or surfeits . . . . .                                                         | 167        |
| for melancholy . . . . .                                                                      | <i>ib.</i> |
| for a desperate sickness, fe-<br>vers, surfeits, pestilence<br>and to give strength . . . . . | 168        |
| for the pestilence and all fe-<br>vers . . . . .                                              | <i>ib.</i> |
| a lenitive . . . . .                                                                          | <i>ib.</i> |
| Gall, diseases of the . . . . .                                                               | 152        |
| Gelding of colts or old horses . . . . .                                                      | 221        |

## H.

|                               |     |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| Hungry-evil . . . . .         | 53  |
| Head-ache . . . . .           | 72  |
| Hoofs, to make grow . . . . . | 112 |
| for brittle . . . . .         | 128 |
| do . . . . .                  | 169 |



|                                       | PAGE.      |
|---------------------------------------|------------|
| do . . . . .                          | 190        |
| do . . . . .                          | 114        |
| strain in the . . . . .               | 63         |
| Humors, to drive back . . . . .       | 119        |
| to purge away . . . . .               | 64         |
| to keep back . . . . .                | 159        |
| to dissolve . . . . .                 | 220        |
| Haw, by some called Hoakes, in the    |            |
| eye . . . . .                         | 121        |
| do . . . . .                          | 153        |
| Hide-bound . . . . .                  | 121        |
| do . . . . .                          | 151        |
| do . . . . .                          | 189        |
| Hair grow, to make . . . . .          | 132        |
| shedding of the . . . . .             | 66         |
| Heat, a great, as in hunting, racing, |            |
| or hard riding, that the              |            |
| horse's grease is melted . . . . .    | 67         |
| Heels, stub in the . . . . .          | 71         |
| kib'd . . . . .                       | 119        |
| swelled . . . . .                     | 206        |
| cracked . . . . .                     | <i>ib.</i> |
| Horse-ointment for cuts, threads,     |            |
| bruises, &c. . . . .                  | 205        |

## I.

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Itch, for the mad . . . . . | 56  |
| do . . . . .                | 123 |
| Imposthumes . . . . .       | 137 |
| do in the ear . . . . .     | 154 |
| to ripen . . . . .          | 123 |
| to cure . . . . .           | 124 |
| Ives . . . . .              | 176 |
| Inflammation . . . . .      | 182 |



K.

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Kidneys, strain in the   | 106 |
| do                       | 179 |
| Knot or excretion        | 111 |
| Kib'd heels              | 119 |
| Kernels under the throat | 181 |

L.

|                                                                      |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Legs swelled                                                         | 45  |
| do                                                                   | 216 |
| goured                                                               | 45  |
| hewing of the                                                        | 64  |
| Loose stomach                                                        | 47  |
| Looseness or laxative                                                | 49  |
| Lungs, cough of the                                                  | 54  |
| do                                                                   | 59  |
| heaving of the                                                       | 162 |
| Lameness                                                             | 203 |
| do                                                                   | 204 |
| in the joints or other parts,<br>where there is no out-<br>ward mark | 102 |
| Loin, a wrench in the                                                | 106 |
| Leprosy                                                              | 111 |
| Lampas                                                               | 155 |
| do                                                                   | 102 |
| Liggs                                                                | 155 |
| Lax                                                                  | 187 |
| do                                                                   | 222 |
| do                                                                   | 49  |
| Lice                                                                 | 190 |
| do                                                                   | 161 |

M.

|       |     |
|-------|-----|
| Mules | 45  |
| do    | 114 |



|                                                               | PAGE, |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Molten grease . . . . .                                       | 47    |
| do . . . . .                                                  | 67    |
| do . . . . .                                                  | 201   |
| Mange . . . . .                                               | 59    |
| do . . . . .                                                  | 66    |
| do . . . . .                                                  | 90    |
| do . . . . .                                                  | 111   |
| a dry inward . . . . .                                        | 211   |
| Murrain . . . . .                                             | 108   |
| Moon-eyes . . . . .                                           | 109   |
| do . . . . .                                                  | 153   |
| Mourning of the chine . . . . .                               | 125   |
| Mallender . . . . .                                           | 186   |
| do . . . . .                                                  | 201   |
| do . . . . .                                                  | 208   |
| do . . . . .                                                  | 183   |
| Mad dog, bite of a . . . . .                                  | 221   |
| Medicines and drenches for all in-<br>ward diseases . . . . . | 231   |

## N.

|                      |     |
|----------------------|-----|
| Navel.gall . . . . . | 154 |
| do . . . . .         | 181 |
| do . . . . .         | 190 |

## P.

|                                                                                                            |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Pestilence . . . . .                                                                                       | 50  |
| do . . . . .                                                                                               | 108 |
| do . . . . .                                                                                               | 178 |
| Pocky farcion, a foul rank . . . . .                                                                       | 53  |
| Pipes, to clear the . . . . .                                                                              | 59  |
| Purge . . . . .                                                                                            | 147 |
| for filthy slime, and to carry<br>away the peccant humors<br>which surfeits have en-<br>gendered . . . . . | 149 |



|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| Pricked in shoeing     | 72  |
| Pastern, strain in the | 190 |
| Plague                 | 108 |
| Pains                  | 110 |
| do                     | 114 |
| do                     | 227 |
| in the teeth           | 155 |
| Pearl in the eyes      | 113 |
| do                     | 153 |
| Pin in the eye         | 113 |
| do                     | 153 |
| Phrensy                | 126 |
| Poll-evil              | 154 |
| do                     | 185 |
| do                     | 222 |
| do                     | 224 |
| Pissing blood          | 177 |
| in the cuds            | 193 |
| Palsy                  | 188 |
| Pursiness              | 217 |
| do                     | 230 |
| Poison                 | 221 |

## Q.

|              |     |
|--------------|-----|
| Quitter-bone | 105 |
| do           | 141 |
| Quincy       | 210 |

## R.

|                       |            |
|-----------------------|------------|
| Rowels, of            | 83         |
| Rage of love in mares | 101        |
| Ring-bone             | 129        |
| do                    | 159        |
| do                    | <i>ib.</i> |
| do                    | 201        |
| do                    | 231        |
| Ruptures              | 233        |



| S.                                  |   |   |   | PAGE.      |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|------------|
| Swelling                            | - | - | - | 110        |
| do                                  | - | - | - | 113        |
| do                                  | - | - | - | 180        |
| do                                  | - | - | - | 182        |
| in the legs                         | - | - | - | 45         |
| in the head                         | - | - | - | 72         |
| that comes by getting cold          |   |   |   |            |
| into a wound                        | - | - | - | 91         |
| of the bask                         | - | - | - | 119        |
| after blood letting                 | - | - | - | 154        |
| to take down                        | - | - | - | 178        |
| and cracks in the legs              | - | - | - | 206        |
| or goured                           | - | - | - | 216        |
| in a vein upon letting blood        | - | - | - | 177        |
| Sickness                            | - | - | - | 47         |
| do                                  | - | - | - | 150        |
| Scouring, to cause                  | - | - | - | 49         |
| do                                  | - | - | - | 50         |
| do                                  | - | - | - | 132        |
| do                                  | - | - | - | 189        |
| drink                               | - | - | - | 191        |
| to stop                             | - | - | - | 189        |
| Scratches                           | - | - | - | 49         |
| do                                  | - | - | - | 114        |
| do                                  | - | - | - | 115        |
| do                                  | - | - | - | 118        |
| do                                  | - | - | - | 172        |
| do                                  | - | - | - | 173        |
| do                                  | - | - | - | <i>ib.</i> |
| do                                  | - | - | - | 227        |
| Star, to make a, in the forehead or |   |   |   |            |
| any other place                     | - | - | - | 52         |
| Stranguary, by some called Stran-   |   |   |   |            |
| gullion or suppression              |   |   |   |            |
| of urine                            | - | - | - | 53         |
| do                                  | - | - | - | 56         |



|                                        |   |   |   |            |
|----------------------------------------|---|---|---|------------|
| do                                     | - | - | - | 215        |
| Strangling in the guts                 | - | - | - | 59         |
| do                                     | - | - | - | 210        |
| Stifle in the stifling-bone            | - | - | - | 58         |
| do                                     | - | - | - | 209        |
| Strain                                 | - | - | - | 119        |
| in the shoulder                        | - | - | - | 182        |
| do                                     | - | - | - | 214        |
| do                                     | - | - | - | 110        |
| in the coffin-joint or sive-bone       | - | - | - |            |
| in the socket of the hoof              | - | - | - | 63         |
| in the pastern                         | - | - | - | 90         |
| in the back                            | - | - | - | <i>ib.</i> |
| in the sinews                          | - | - | - | <i>ib.</i> |
| in the kidneys                         | - | - | - | 179        |
| in the stifle                          | - | - | - | 119        |
| Sinew-strain                           | - | - | - | 81         |
| do                                     | - | - | - | 85         |
| do                                     | - | - | - | 118        |
| putrified                              | - | - | - | 227        |
| sprung-horse                           | - | - | - | 214        |
| convulsion of                          | - | - | - | 151        |
| Swift-cut                              | - | - | - | 64         |
| Surfeits                               | - | - | - | 131        |
| do                                     | - | - | - | 231        |
| by colds                               | - | - | - | 65         |
| running, which falls out of his        | - | - | - |            |
| body into his fore legs                | - | - | - | 73         |
| Shedding of the hair                   | - | - | - | 66         |
| Stub in the foot                       | - | - | - | 71         |
| or thorn, to draw out a                | - | - | - | 150        |
| Stale, to make a horse                 | - | - | - | 79         |
| difficulty to                          | - | - | - | 209        |
| Suppository to suple the guts, to send | - | - | - |            |
| forth all dry hot                      | - | - | - |            |
| excrements                             | - | - | - | 99         |



|                                    |                                                                                              |   |            |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------|
|                                    | when you dare not without<br>peril of his life give<br>him any other me-<br>dicines inwardly | - | 100        |
|                                    | to purge phlegm                                                                              | - | <i>ib.</i> |
| Strangles                          | -                                                                                            | - | 103        |
| do                                 | -                                                                                            | - | 131        |
|                                    | in the Spring                                                                                | - | 171        |
| Splents                            | -                                                                                            | - | 104        |
| do                                 | -                                                                                            | - | 111        |
| do                                 | -                                                                                            | - | 202        |
| do                                 | -                                                                                            | - | 218        |
| do                                 | -                                                                                            | - | 220        |
| Spavin                             | -                                                                                            | - | 111        |
| do                                 | -                                                                                            | - | 199        |
| do                                 | -                                                                                            | - | 203        |
| blood                              | -                                                                                            | - | 104        |
| do                                 | -                                                                                            | - | 218        |
| bone                               | -                                                                                            | - | 104        |
| bog                                | -                                                                                            | - | 233        |
| Scab                               | -                                                                                            | - | 111        |
| for a crown                        | -                                                                                            | - | 132        |
| Surbate                            | -                                                                                            | - | 112        |
| Stroke or bite on the eye          | -                                                                                            | - | 115        |
| Stone, or a horse that cannot piss | -                                                                                            | - | 116        |
| do                                 | -                                                                                            | - | 138        |
| do                                 | -                                                                                            | - | 117        |
| do                                 | -                                                                                            | - | 215        |
| Spleen                             | -                                                                                            | - | 118        |
|                                    | sickness of the                                                                              | - | 152        |
| Shoulders galled                   | -                                                                                            | - | 122        |
| slip                               | -                                                                                            | - | 209        |
| Staggers                           | -                                                                                            | - | 176        |
| mad                                | -                                                                                            | - | 174        |
| Set-fast                           | -                                                                                            | - | 154        |
| do                                 | -                                                                                            | - | 190        |



|                     | PAGE.      |
|---------------------|------------|
| Sight, dimness of   | 110        |
| Sore back           | 190        |
| do                  | 226        |
| Stumbling           | 198        |
| Sand-cracks         | 201        |
| Sallenders          | <i>ib.</i> |
| Shortness of breath | 230        |
| Sleeping-evil       | 161        |

## T.

|                                |            |
|--------------------------------|------------|
| Tread or cut above the hoof    | 71         |
| Tetter                         | 120        |
| Thorn, to draw out a           | 150        |
| Tung-burnt                     | 155        |
| Teeth, pains in the            | <i>ib.</i> |
| loose                          | <i>ib.</i> |
| Throat-kernels                 | 181        |
| Threads                        | 205        |
| Tumors, cankerous, in the feet | 123        |

## U.

|                       |     |
|-----------------------|-----|
| Urine, suppression of | 56  |
| Ulcer                 | 116 |
| do                    | 154 |
| do                    | 119 |
| do                    | 222 |

## V.

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Vives                            | 123 |
| do                               | 154 |
| Vomit, to cause an horse to      | 140 |
| Vein, swelled upon letting blood | 177 |
| to conglutinate any broken       | 118 |
| Venom, drinking of               | 102 |
| against                          | 221 |



## W.

|                         |   |   |   |            |
|-------------------------|---|---|---|------------|
| Wind, to expel          | - | - | - | 59         |
| cholic                  | - | - | - | 187        |
| Wind-broken             | - | - | - | 171        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 204        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 217        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 230        |
| Wound                   | - | - | - | 84         |
| do                      | - | - | - | 156        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 157        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 193        |
| do ; see horse-ointment | - | - | - | 205        |
| to cleanse a            | - | - | - | 161        |
| Wrench in the back-bone | - | - | - | 106        |
| Wind-gall               | - | - | - | 110        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 156        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 203        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 216        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 218        |
| Worms                   | - | - | - | 122        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 214        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 125        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 215        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 133        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 210        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 138        |
| do                      | - | - | - | 146        |
| Wens                    | - | - | - | 132        |
| Womb, barrenness of     | - | - | - | 222        |
| Wolve's-teeth           | - | - | - | 237        |
| Warbles                 | - | - | - | <i>ib.</i> |

## Y.

|              |   |   |   |     |
|--------------|---|---|---|-----|
| Yellow-water | - | - | - | 233 |
| Yellows      | - | - | - | 152 |
| do           | - | - | - | 178 |
| do           | - | - | - | 217 |



|                                                            | PAGE. |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Yard foul or furred, so that he pisses<br>in his cod - - - | 193   |

## INDEX

OF

## MISCELLANEOUS PIECES.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Prefatory Address. - - - -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 3  |
| Observations on the Management of<br>Horses when Travelling - -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 5  |
| General Observations, Helps and Adver-<br>tisements, for any man when he<br>goeth about to <i>buy</i> a horse - -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 13 |
| How to know the <i>Age of a Horse</i> by his<br><i>Teeth</i> , until thirteen years old -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 24 |
| Do until seven years old, with<br>Directions for Buying - -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 26 |
| Order how to Breed Horses,—viz.—<br>1st. The choice of your stallion &<br>mare—2d. Wild mares are not<br>best for races—3d. At what age<br>your mare is to be handled and<br>covered—4th. The best age for<br>horse or mare to get or bare<br>colts, and how many years they<br>will continue good—5th. What<br>time of the year is best to wean<br>colts from their dams—6th. |    |



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |         |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|----|
| What feeding is best for colts from and after two years old—7th. Why horses being taken up so young are not good—8th. The way to handle a sturdy horse—9th. The using of horses after they are handled—10th. What feeding is best in winter for mares, and weanlings of 2 years old—11th. At what age colts may be broke | - - - - | 31 |
| Certain Infallible Helps and Cures for those Infirmities which are most dangerous, and do commonly attend all horses, especially the Running-horse                                                                                                                                                                       | - -     | 36 |
| How to Order, Feed and keep any Horse for Pleasure, Hunting or Travelling                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |         | 37 |
| To give much Breath, or to make a Horse long-winded, or to clear the Pipes and Lungs : see Strangling, &c.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |         | 59 |



# INDEX

OF

## PIECES RELATING TO CATTLE.

### C.

|                                      | PAGE. |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| Calve, for cows that cannot          | 93    |
| Cough                                | 94    |
| do                                   | 43    |
| Cud, for cattle that have lost their | 95    |
| Clean well, for cows that do not     | 41    |
| Cholic                               | 43    |

### D.

|                          |    |
|--------------------------|----|
| Diseases that are inward | 44 |
| do                       | 94 |

### F.

|      |    |
|------|----|
| Flux | 43 |
|------|----|

### G.

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Garget in the dug or udder | 85  |
| in the throat              | 88  |
| at the root of the tongue  | ib. |
| in the guts                | 89  |
| Gall, overflowing of the   | ib. |
| do                         | 44  |
| Gravel                     | ib. |

### I.

|                 |    |
|-----------------|----|
| Inward diseases | 44 |
| do              | 94 |

### L.

|               |     |
|---------------|-----|
| Lice, to kill | 190 |
|---------------|-----|



|              | PAGE. |
|--------------|-------|
| do - - - - - | 87    |
| do - - - - - | 161   |

## M.

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Mother fallen out - - -    | 159 |
| Mange - - - - -            | 90  |
| Milk, how to produce - - - | 41  |
| do - - - - -               | 44  |

## O.

|                                                                                                                                                  |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Ordering of cattle in the time of feed-<br>ing when there is great ful-<br>ness of grass, as in the<br>months of May, June and<br>July - - - - - | 86 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|

## P.

|                                     |    |
|-------------------------------------|----|
| Pissing red - - - - -               | 85 |
| do - - - - -                        | 89 |
| Palate down - - - - -               | 96 |
| Poison or venom that is eaten . . . | 45 |

## R.

|                       |    |
|-----------------------|----|
| Red pissing . . . . . | 85 |
| do . . . . .          | 89 |

## S.

|                                                        |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Swelled by eating green corn and the<br>like . . . . . | 95 |
| Sound, to know if cattle be . . .                      | 43 |

## W.

|                 |    |
|-----------------|----|
| Worms . . . . . | 42 |
|-----------------|----|













Med. Hist.

WZ

270

F8312

1803

C 1



